DS AUTOMOBILES

DS 7 CROSSBACK

HANDBOOK

SCAN MyDS

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

Access to the Handbook

MOBILE APPLICATIONS

Install the **Scan MyDS** application (content available offline).

Also available in the **MyDS App** application.

ONLINE

View or download the handbook at the following address:

http://service.dsautomobiles.com

Scan this QR Code for direct access.

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle and body style,
- the issue period of the handbook corresponding to the date of 1st registration of the vehicle.

This symbol indicates the latest information available.

WELCOME

Thank you for choosing a DS 7 CROSSBACK.
This document contains the key information and recommendations you will need to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety. We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with it, as well as the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.
Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.
The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.
The **DS AUTOMOBILES** brand is marketed by Automobiles CITROËN, a public limited company with a share capital of €159,000,000 whose head office is located at 2-10 boulevard de l'Europe, 78300 POISSY, FRANCE, registered with the Trade and Company Register (RCS) of Versailles under number 642 050 199, hereafter referred to as the "Manufacturer" and who reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this document.
If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

! For any work on your vehicle, contact a member of the Manufacturer's dealer network, hereinafter referred to as a 'dealer', or a qualified workshop.

Key

! Safety warning

i Additional information

e Environmental protection feature

Left-hand drive vehicle

Right-hand drive vehicle

Location of equipment/button indicated using a black area

Overview

Eco-driving

01 Instruments
10 Digital instrument panels
12 Warning and indicator lamps
18 Indicators
21 Manual test
22 Total distance recorder
22 Lighting dimmer
22 Trip computer
23 Clock
24 Touch screen
26 Remote functions (Rechargeable hybrid)

02 Access
27 Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key,
28 Keyless Entry and Start
30 Central locking
31 Back-up procedures
33 Doors
33 Boot
34 Motorised tailgate
38 Alarm
40 Electric windows
41 Panoramic sunroof

03 Ease of use and comfort
43 Driving position
44 Front seats
48 Steering wheel adjustment
48 Mirrors
49 Rear seats
51 DS SENSORIAL DRIVE function
52 Heating and Ventilation
53 Manual air conditioning
54 Dual-zone automatic air conditioning
57 Front demisting - defrosting
57 Rear screen demisting/defrosting
57 Heated windscreen
58 Additional heating/ventilation system
59 Temperature pre-conditioning (Rechargeable hybrid)
60 Front fittings
64 Touch-sensitive courtesy lamps
64 Interior ambient lighting
65 Rear fittings
65 Boot fittings

04 Lighting and visibility
68 Exterior lighting control stalk
69 Direction indicators
70 Headlamp beam height adjustment
70 Automatic illumination of headlamps
71 Guide-me-home and welcome lighting
71 Automatic lighting systems - General recommendations
72 Automatic headlamp dipping
73 Adaptive Frontlight System
74 Cornering lighting
74 Dynamic cornering lighting
75 DS NIGHT VISION
76 Wiper control stalk
78 Changing a wiper blade
78 Automatic wipers

05 Safety
80 General safety recommendations
80 Hazard warning lamps
81 Horn
81 Pedestrian horn (Rechargeable hybrid)
81 Emergency or assistance
83 Electronic stability control (ESC)
85 Advanced Traction Control
86 Seat belts
88 Airbags
90 Child seats
92 Deactivating the front passenger airbag
95 ISOFIX child seats
99 i-Size child seats
99 Child lock

06 Driving
101 Driving recommendations
102 Starting/switching off the engine
103 Starting rechargeable hybrid vehicles
104 Electric parking brake
106 Automatic gearbox
109 e-EAT8 automatic gearbox (Rechargeable hybrid)
111 DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION
111 Driving modes
113 Hill start assist
114 Gear shift indicator
114 Stop & Start
116 Under-inflation detection
117 Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations
118 Road signs recognition
121 Speed limiter
122 Cruise control - Specific recommendations
123 Programmable cruise control
124 DS DRIVE ASSIST
124 Adaptive cruise control
128 Lane positioning assist
132 Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

134 Distraction detection
136 Lane departure warning system
136 Active lane departure warning system
139 Blind spot monitoring
140 Parking sensors
142 Reversing camera - 360 Vision
146 Park Assist
150 DS PARK PILOT

07 Practical information
155 Compatibility of fuels
155 Refuelling
156 Misfuel prevention (Diesel)
157 Rechargeable hybrid system
164 Charging the traction battery (Rechargeable hybrid engine)
166 Towing device
167 Towing device with retractable ball joint
168 Roof bars
169 Very cold climate screens
169 Snow chains
170 Energy economy mode
170 Bonnet
171 Engine compartment
172 Checking levels
174 Checks
175 AdBlue® (BlueHDi)
177 Free-wheeling
178 Advice on care and maintenance

08 In the event of a breakdown
180 Warning triangle
180 Running out of fuel (Diesel)
181 Tool kit
182 Temporary puncture repair kit
184 Spare wheel
187 Changing a bulb
190 Fuses
190 12 V battery
193 Accessory battery (Rechargeable hybrid)
196 Towing the vehicle

09 Technical data
199 Engine technical data and towed loads
200 Petrol engines
202 Diesel engines
203 Rechargeable hybrid engines
204 Dimensions
204 Identification markings

10 DS CONNECT RADIO
206 First steps
207 Steering mounted controls
208 Menus
209 Applications
209 Radio
211 DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio
211 Media
213 Telephone
216 Settings
217 Frequently asked questions

11 NAVIGATION
219 First steps
220 Steering mounted controls
220 Menus
222 Voice commands
225 Navigation
228 Connected navigation
230 Applications
232 Radio
233 DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio
234 Media
235 Telephone
238 Settings
240 Frequently asked questions

12 Event data recorders

Alphabetical index

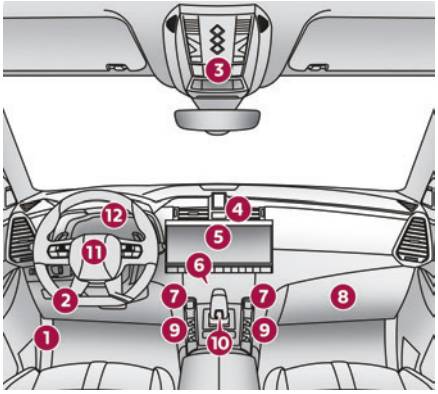
Access to additional videos

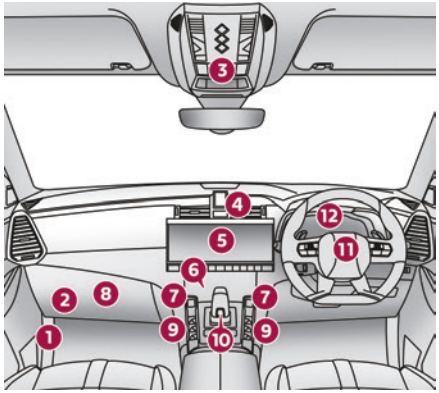
bit.ly/helpPSA

Presentation

These illustrations and descriptions are intended as a guide. The presence and location of certain elements may vary, depending on the version or trim level.

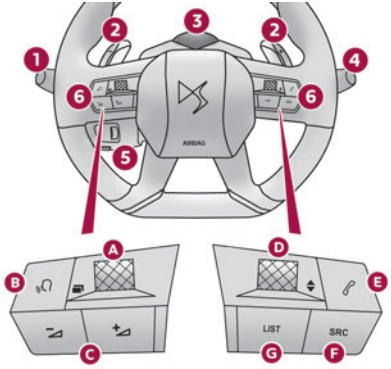
Instruments and controls





1. Bonnet release
2. Dashboard fuses
3. Emergency call/Assistance call
   Deactivation of the alarm's interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring
   Panoramic sunroof and blind controls
   Courtesy lamp
   Warning lamps display for seat belts and front passenger airbag
   Interior rear view mirror/Driving in **Electric** mode indicator LED
4. Starting/switching off the engine
   Clock
5. Touch screen with DS CONNECT RADIO or NAVIGATION
6. Wireless smartphone charger
   12 V socket/USB socket
7. Electric parking brake
   Select a driving mode
8. Glove box
   Deactivation of the front passenger airbag
9. Electric windows
   Central locking
   Electric child lock
10. Gearbox
    DS PARK PILOT
11. Horn
    Driver front airbag
12. Instrument panel

Steering-mounted controls

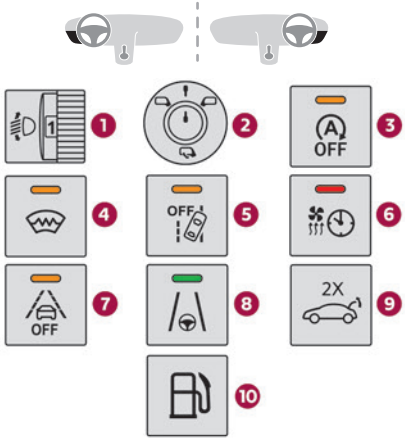


1. Exterior lighting control stalks/Direction indicators
2. Automatic gearbox control paddles

3. Infrared camera (associated with the DS DRIVER ATTENTION MONITORING function)
4. Wipers/Screenwash/Trip computer control stalk
5. Controls for Cruise control/Speed limiter/ Adaptive cruise control
6. Audio system controls

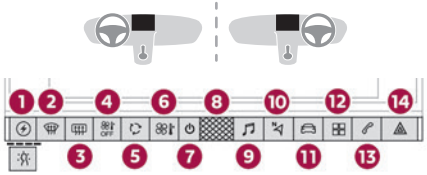
A. Select the instrument panel display mode
B. Voice commands
C. Decrease/Increase volume
D. Select previous/next media
Confirm a selection
E. Access the **Telephone** menu
Manage calls
F. Select an audio source
G. Display the list of radio stations/audio tracks

Side control bar



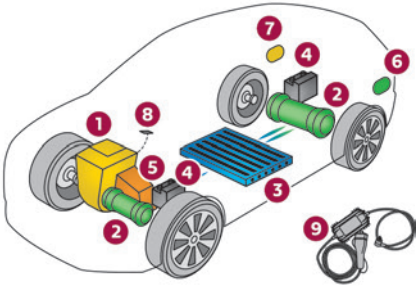
1. Manual headlamp beam height adjustment
2. Door mirrors adjustment
3. Stop & Start
4. Heated windscreen
5. Lane departure warning system
6. Programmable heating or temperature pre-conditioning operation indicator lamp
7. Active lane departure warning system
8. Lane positioning assist
9. Opening/closing the motorised tailgate
10. Opening the fuel filler flap

Central switch panel



1. Accessing the **Energy** menu or the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function
2. Automatic Visibility programme
3. Rear screen demisting/defrosting
4. Ventilation off
5. Manual recirculation of the interior air
6. Access to the **Climate** menu
7. Audio system on/off
8. Volume adjustment
9. Access to the **Radio Media** menu
10. Access to the **Navigation** menu
11. Access to the **Driving** or **Vehicle** menu
12. Access to the **Applications** menu
13. Access to the **Telephone** menu
14. Hazard warning lamps

Rechargeable hybrid system



1. Petrol engine
2. Front and rear electric motors (depending on version)
3. Traction battery
4. 12 V accessories batteries
5. 8-speed electric automatic gearbox (e-EAT8)
6. Charging flap
7. Fuel filler flap
8. Driving mode selector
9. Domestic charging cable

The **rechargeable hybrid** technology combines two sources of energy: that of the petrol engine and that of one or two electric motors (depending on version).
The engine and the motor can operate alternately or simultaneously, according to the driving mode selected and the driving conditions.

The electric power alone provides the mobility of the vehicle in **Electric** mode, and in **Hybrid** mode in case of moderate demand. It assists the petrol engine during starting and acceleration phases. The electric power is supplied by a rechargeable traction battery.

Labels

"Ease of use and comfort - Additional heating/ventilation system":

"Ease of use and comfort - Front equipment - Wireless smartphone charger" section:

"Lighting and visibility - Exterior lighting control stalk" and "In the event of a breakdown - Changing a bulb" sections:

"Safety - Seats - Deactivating the front passenger airbag" section:

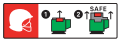
"Safety - ISOFIX mountings" section:

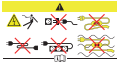
"Driving - Electric parking brake" section:

"Driving - Stop & Start" section:

"Practical information - Compatibility of fuels" section:

"Practical information - Rechargeable hybrid system" section:





"Practical information - Charging the traction battery (Rechargeable hybrid)" section:

"Practical information - Bonnet" section:

"In the event of a breakdown - Temporary puncture repair kit" section:

"In the event of a breakdown - Spare wheel" section:

"In the event of a breakdown - 12 V battery" section:

"In the event of a breakdown - Accessory batteries (Rechargeable hybrid)" section:

Eco-driving

Eco-driving refers to a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise the vehicle's energy consumption (fuel and/or electricity) and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise your use of the gearbox

With an automatic gearbox, favour automatic mode. Do not depress the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.
The gear shift indicator prompts you to engage the most suitable gear. Whenever this indication is displayed on the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These practices help to save on energy consumption, reduce CO_2 emissions and decrease general traffic noise.
Favour the use of the "Eco" driving mode by selecting it using the "DRIVE MODE" control.
When the traffic is flowing smoothly, select the cruise control.

Control the use of electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
At speeds above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (e.g. sunroof blind, window blinds).
Unless automatically regulated, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting functions, if they are not managed automatically.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.
Adapt your use of the headlamps and/or foglamps to the level of visibility, in accordance with current legislation in the country in which you are driving.
Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter (other than in severe wintry conditions: temperature below -23°C). The vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.
As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (e.g. film, music, video game) to help reduce the consumption of energy.
Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle. Place the heaviest items in the boot as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and minimise wind resistance (e.g. roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer). Preferably, use a roof box.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.
At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit summer tyres.

Comply with the servicing instructions

Check tyre pressures regularly, with the tyres cold, referring to the label in the door aperture on the driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:
- before a long journey.
- at each change of season.
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and, where applicable, the tyres on your trailer or caravan.
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (e.g. engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.). Observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.
With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system has a fault, your vehicle will emit pollution. Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to restore your vehicle's nitrogen oxide emissions to legal levels.
When filling the fuel tank, do not continue after the third cut-out of the nozzle, to avoid overflow.
You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres).

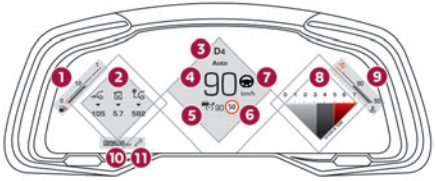
Optimising the driving range (rechargeable hybrid vehicles)

Connect the vehicle as soon as possible.
Favour the **ECO** zone of the power indicator by driving smoothly and at a steady speed.

Anticipate slowing down as much as possible and, if possible, favour decelerations with regenerative braking mode activated (power indicator in the **CHARGE** zone).
With the vehicle connected, carry out temperature pre-conditioning before setting off.
To optimise consumption during a journey:
► Programme a destination in the vehicle's GPS navigation system.
► Select the **Hybrid** driving mode.
► Make sure that the battery charge level is close to maximum.
► Do not use the e-Save function while driving.
► Use the heating/air conditioning system wisely.

Digital instrument panel

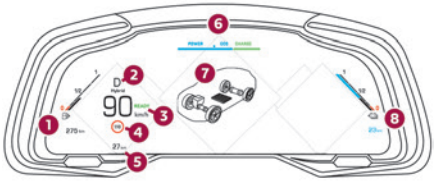
This digital instrument panel can be customised. Depending on the display mode selected, certain information is hidden or presented differently. Example with the "**Personal**" display mode:



1. Fuel gauge
2. Trip computer
3. Gear shift indicator
   Status of the automatic gearbox
   Active driving mode
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)
5. Cruise control/speed limiter settings
6. Display of speed limit signs
7. Function status Lane positioning assist
8. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm)
9. Coolant temperature indicator (°C)
10. Total distance recorder (miles or km)
11. Service spanner

Digital instrument panel (Rechargeable hybrid)

This digital instrument panel can be customised. Depending on the display mode selected, certain information is hidden or presented differently. Example with the "**Energy**" display mode:



1. Fuel gauge and remaining range (miles or km)
2. Status of the automatic gearbox
   Active driving mode
3. Speedometer (mph or km/h)
   READY indicator lamp
4. Cruise control/speed limiter settings
   Display of speed limit signs
5. Total distance recorder (miles or km)
6. Power indicator
7. Power flow
8. Traction battery charge level and remaining range (miles or km)

> i In all-electric driving mode, the speed is displayed in blue.

Displays

Some lamps have a fixed location, others can change location.

For certain functions that have indicator lamps for both operation and deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

Permanent information

In the standard display, the instrument panel shows:
- in fixed locations:
  - Fuel gauge.
  - Coolant temperature indicator.
  - Charge level and range indicator (Rechargeable hybrid).
  - Total distance recorder.
- in variable locations:
  - Information related to the gearbox and gear shift indicator.
  - Digital speedometer.
  - Power indicator (Rechargeable hybrid).
  - Status or alert messages displayed temporarily.

Optional information

Depending on the selected display mode and active features, additional information may be displayed:
- Rev counter (Petrol or Diesel).
- Trip computer.
- Driving aid functions.
- Speed limiter or cruise control.
- Media currently playing.
- Navigation instructions.
- Engine information (G-meters, Power-meters, Boost, Torque) in Sport mode.
- DS NIGHT VISION function.

– Energy flows (Rechargeable hybrid).

Customising the instrument panel

Depending on version, the appearance of the instrument panel may be customisable (colour and/or display mode).

Display language and units
These depend on the touch screen settings.
When travelling abroad, the speed must be shown in the official units of the country you are driving in (mph, miles or km/h, km).

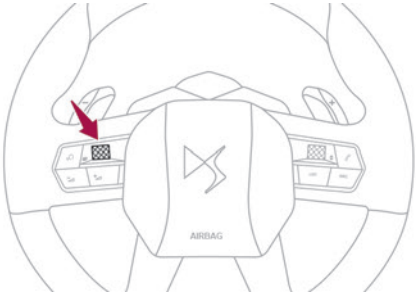
As a safety measure, these adjustments must be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Choosing a display colour

The display colour can be selected in the setting of a profile in the **Settings** touch screen menu. It can also be related to the ambience activated by the DS SENSORIAL DRIVE function.
Depending on version, the possible choices are:
– "**Cashmere**": purple,
– "**Titanium**": crimson,
– "**Normal**" (no ambience activated): white and champagne.
For more information on the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Choosing the display mode

In each mode, specific types of information are displayed on the instrument panel.



► Turn the thumbwheel on the left of the steering wheel to display and scroll through the various modes on the right-hand side of the instrument panel.
► Press the thumbwheel to confirm the mode.
If you do not press the thumbwheel, the selected display mode is automatically applied after a few moments.

Display modes

– "**Dials**": standard display of analogue and digital speedometers, total distance recorder and:
  · fuel gauge, coolant temperature indicator and rev counter (Petrol or Diesel).
  · fuel gauge, battery charge level indicator and power indicator (Rechargeable hybrid).
– "**Navigation**": specific display, showing current navigation information (map and instructions).
– "**Driving**": specific display, showing information relating to active driving aid systems.
– "**Minimum**": limited display with digital speedometer, total distance recorder and:
  · fuel gauge and coolant temperature indicator (Petrol or Diesel).
  · fuel gauge and battery charge level indicator (Rechargeable hybrid).
– "**Night vision**": minimal display with infrared camera image (associated with the DS NIGHT VISION function).
– "**Energy**": specific display, showing a visual representation of the vehicle's energy flows (Rechargeable hybrid).
– "**Personal**": minimal display, with the ability to select and display optional information in the personalisable areas on the left and right.

Configuring a "Personal" display mode

With DS CONNECT RADIO

► Press **Settings** in the banner of the touch screen.

► Select "**Configuration**".

► Select "**Instrument panel personalisation**".

With NAVIGATION

► Press **Settings** in the banner of the touch screen.
► Select "**OPTIONS**".

► Select "**Instrument panel personalisation**".

► For each personalised display area (left and right), select a type of information using the corresponding scroll arrows on the touch screen:

- "**Driving aids**".
- "**Default**" (empty).
- "**Engine info**" (Sport mode).
- "**G-metres**" (Sport mode).
- "**Temperatures**" (engine oil).
- "**Media**".
- "**Navigation**".
- "**Trip computer**".
- "**Rev counter**".
- "**Hybrid flows**" (depending on version).
- "**Power indicator**" (depending on version).
- "**Accessories consumption**" (depending on version).
- "**Night vision**".
- "**Level of vigilance**".

► Confirm to save and exit.

"**Personal" mode is displayed immediately.**

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lamps inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.
For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Persistent warning lamp

If a red or orange warning lamp comes on, there may be fault which needs further investigation.

If a lamp remains lit

The references **(1)**, **(2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.
(1): **You must stop the vehicle**.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
(2): Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
(3): Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lamps

Red warning/indicator lamps

STOP

Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering or automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Maximum coolant temperature

Fixed, accompanied by the STOP warning lamp.
The temperature of the cooling system is too high.
Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Engine oil pressure

Fixed.
There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

System malfunction (Rechargeable hybrid)

Fixed.
The rechargeable hybrid system is faulty.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Cable connected (Rechargeable hybrid)

Fixed when the ignition is switched on.
The charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.

Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by a message.
It is not possible to start the vehicle while the charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.
Disconnect the charging cable and close the flap.

12V battery charge (depending on country of sale)

Fixed.
The battery charging circuit is faulty (e.g. dirty terminals, loose or severed alternator belt).
Carry out (1).
If the electric parking brake stops working, immobilise the vehicle:
► With the automatic gearbox, fit the chocks against one of the wheels.
Clean and tighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Braking

Fixed.
The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.
Carry out (1), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Fixed.
The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Electric parking brake

Fixed.
The electric parking brake is applied.

Flashing.
Application/release is faulty.
Carry out (1): park on flat ground (on a level surface).
With an automatic gearbox, select mode **P**.
Switch off the ignition and carry out (2).

DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION

Fixed.
A malfunction of the active suspension system is detected.
Reinitialise the system:
► Switch the ignition off and wait for at least 30 seconds.
► Switch the ignition on again and wait for at least 5 seconds before starting the engine.
If the problem persists, carry out (3).

Door(s) open

Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access.
An audible signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).
A door or the boot is not properly closed.

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened

Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.
A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

Orange warning/indicator lamps

Service

Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.
One or more minor faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel.
You may be able to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery in the remote control.
For other faults, such as with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
One or more major faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel, then carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".
Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.
Carry out (2).

Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
The vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
Only with BlueHDi Diesel engines.

Braking

Fixed.
A minor fault with the braking system has been detected.
Drive carefully.
Carry out (3).

Malfunction (with electric parking brake)

Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".
The vehicle cannot be immobilised with the engine running.
If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control is faulty.
The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of a fault with the control.
Carry out (2).

Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".
The electric parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.
When stationary, to immobilise the vehicle:
► Pull the electric parking brake control and hold it for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel.
If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:
► Park on a level surface.
► With an automatic gearbox, select **P**, then place the supplied chocks against one of the wheels.
Then carry out (2).

Automatic functions deactivated (electric parking brake)

Fixed.
The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" (on acceleration) functions are deactivated.
If automatic application/release is no longer possible:
► Start the engine.
► Use the control to apply the electric parking brake.
► Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
► Hold the control pressed in the release direction for between 10 and 15 seconds.
► Release the control.
► Depress and hold the brake pedal.
► Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.
► Release the control and the brake pedal.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Fixed.
The anti-lock braking system has a fault.
The vehicle retains conventional braking.
Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Engine self-diagnostic system

Flashing.
The engine management system has a fault.
There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.
You **must** carry out (2).

Fixed.
The emissions control system has a fault.
The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.
Carry out (3) without delay.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

Flashing.
DSC/ASR system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.

Fixed.
The DSC/ASR system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Emergency brake malfunction (with electric parking brake)

Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".
Emergency braking does not deliver optimal performance.
If automatic release is not available, use manual release or carry out (3).

Hill start assist

Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Anti roll-back system fault**".
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Under-inflation

Fixed.
The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.
Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible.
Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.

Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.
The tyre pressure monitoring system is faulty.
Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.
Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

Parking sensors

Fixed, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal.
The system is deactivated.

Fixed, associated with the Service warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Engine pre-heating (Diesel)

Temporarily on
(up to approximately 30 seconds in severe weather conditions).
When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.
Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting.
When the warning lamp goes off, starting will occur immediately if you press and hold:
– the brake pedal with an automatic gearbox.
If the engine does not start, make the engine starting request again, while keeping your foot on the pedal.

Airbags

Fixed.
One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.
Carry out (3).

Front passenger airbag (ON)

Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is activated.
The control is set to the "**ON**" position.
In this case, do NOT install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - risk of serious injury!

Front passenger airbag (OFF)

Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is deactivated.
The control is set to the "**OFF**" position.
A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).

Low fuel level

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
When it first comes on, there is **approximately 6 litres of fuel** remaining in the tank (reserve).
The audible signal and the message are repeated with increasing frequency as the level drops towards zero.
Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.
Never drive until completely empty, as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.

Pedestrian horn (Rechargeable hybrid)

Fixed.
Horn fault detected.
Carry out (3).

Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
The system has been deactivated via the touch screen (**Driving/Vehicle** menu).

Flashing.
The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Fixed.
The system has a fault.
If these warning lamps come on after the engine is switched off and then restarted, carry out (3).

Fixed.
The system is deactivated temporarily because the driver and/or front passenger (depending on version) has been detected as present but the corresponding seat belt has not been fastened.

Lane departure warning system

Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.
A lane marking has been crossed on the left or right.
Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction to return to the correct trajectory.

Fixed, accompanied by an onscreen message.
The system has a fault.
Stay alert and drive carefully, then carry out (3).

Active lane departure warning system

Fixed.
The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.

Flashing.
You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.
The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory on the side of the detected lane marking.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Lane positioning assist

Fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Stop & Start

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
The Stop & Start system has been deactivated manually.
The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop.
Press the button to reactivate Stop & Start.

Fixed.
The Stop & Start system has been deactivated automatically.
The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop, if the exterior temperature is:
- below 0°C.
- above +35°C.

For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Flashing then fixed, accompanied by a message.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).
Top up the AdBlue®.

Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).
Promptly top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (3).

Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).
You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid engine starting being prevented**, or carry out (3).

Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the legally required engine immobiliser system prevents the engine from starting.
To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2).
It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi)

Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
A malfunction of the SCR emissions control system has been detected.
This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.

Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Engine self-diagnostics warning lamp on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
Depending on the message displayed, it is possible to drive for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine immobiliser is triggered.
Carry out (3) without delay, to **avoid starting being prevented**.

Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Engine self-diagnostics warning lamp on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.
The engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (the permitted driving limit has been exceeded after confirmation of a malfunction of the emissions control system).
To start the engine, carry out (2).

Rear foglamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Automatic headlamp dipping

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
A function or camera malfunction is detected.
Carry out (2).

DS NIGHT VISION

Fixed.
The function has been activated, but the vehicle is travelling too fast or the exterior temperature conditions are outside the operating range.
The display is available with "**Night vision**" mode but the system does not emit an alert.
For more information, refer to the **Lighting and visibility** section.

Green warning/indicator lamps

Stop & Start

Fixed.
When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.

Flashing temporarily.
STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Vehicle ready to drive (Rechargeable hybrid)

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal when it comes on.
The vehicle is ready to drive.
The indicator lamp goes out upon reaching a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and lights up again when the vehicle stops moving.
The lamp will go out when you turn off the engine and exit the vehicle.

Eco mode

Fixed.
ECO mode is active.
Certain parameters are adjusted with a view to reducing fuel consumption.

Park Assist or DS PARK PILOT

Fixed.
The function is active.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Lane positioning assist

Fixed.
The function has been activated.
All conditions have been met: the system is operating.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Automatic wiping

Fixed.
Automatic windscreen wiping is activated.

Direction indicators

Flashing with audible signal.
The direction indicators are on.

Sidelamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Dipped beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Front foglamps

Fixed.
The front foglamps are on.

DS NIGHT VISION

Fixed.
(grey)
The function is activated, but not available.

Fixed.
The function is active.
All of the conditions are met: the system is operating.
For more information, refer to the **Lighting and visibility** section.

Automatic headlamp dipping

Fixed.
The function has been activated via the touch screen (**Driving/Vehicle** menu).
The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.
For more information, refer to the **Lighting and visibility** section.

Blue warning/indicator lamps

Main beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

eSave function (Rechargeable hybrid)

Fixed, accompanied by the reserved electric range.
The eSave function is activated.

Black/white warning lamps

Automatic gearbox or Electric automatic gearbox (e-EAT8) (Rechargeable hybrid)

Fixed.
The automatic gearbox is locked.
You must press the **Unlock** button to unlock it.

Indicators

Service indicator

The servicing information is expressed in terms of distance (miles or kilometres) and time (months or days).
The alert is given at whichever of these two terms is reached first.
The servicing information is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the version of the vehicle:
– The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
– An alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

i The value indicated is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.

Service spanner

On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.
Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.

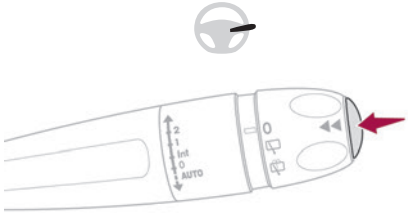
Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).
Have your vehicle serviced very soon.

Service spanner flashing

Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
(With BlueHDi Diesel engines, associated with the Service warning lamp.)
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.
If you have serviced your vehicle yourself:
► Switch off the ignition.



► Press and hold the button located on the end of the wiper control stalk.
► Switch on the ignition; a temporary display window appears and a countdown begins.
► When the display indicates =0, release the button; the spanner disappears.

i If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Reminder of the servicing information

You can view the servicing information by pressing the "**Check/Diagnostic**" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version)
On versions fitted with an electric gauge, the engine oil level status is displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the servicing information, in the form of messages.

i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Low oil level

This is indicated by a message prompting you to top up the level, accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning lamp and an audible signal.

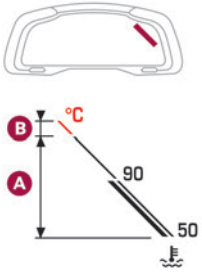
If a low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil gauge malfunction

This is indicated by the message "**Oil level measurement invalid**" on the instrument panel. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In the event of a malfunction of the electric gauge, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located in the engine compartment.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running:

– In zone **A**, the temperature is correct.
– In zone **B**, the temperature is too high.
The associated warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp light up in red on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

! After switching off the ignition, carefully open the bonnet and check the coolant level.

i For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

AdBlue® range indicators (BlueHDi)

The Diesel BlueHDi engines are equipped with a system that associates the SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) emissions control system and the Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases. They cannot function without AdBlue® fluid.
When the level of AdBlue® falls below the reserve level (between 1,500 and 0 miles (2,400 and 0 km)), a warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on and an estimate of the distance that can be travelled before engine starting is prevented is displayed in the instrument panel.

! The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty. It is then no longer possible to start the engine until the minimum level of AdBlue® has been topped up.

Manual display of driving range

While the driving range is greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km), it is not displayed automatically.

You can view the range information by pressing the "**Check/Diagnostic**" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Actions required related to a lack of AdBlue®

The following warning lamps light up when the quantity of AdBlue® is below the reserve level: driving range of 1,500 miles (2,400 km).
Together with the warning lamps, messages regularly remind you of the need to top up to avoid engine starting being prevented. Refer to the **Warning and indicator lamps** section for details of the messages displayed.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi)** and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/ indicator lamps on	Action	Remaining range
AdBlue	Top up.	Between 1,500 miles and 500 miles (2,400 km and 800 km)
AdBlue	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 500 miles and 62 miles (800 km and 100 km)
AdBlue	**A top-up is vital**, there is a risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 62 miles and 0 miles (100 km and 0 km)
AdBlue	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.	0 miles (km)

Malfunction of the SCR emissions control system

Malfunction detection

AdBlue	If a malfunction is detected, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an "**Emissions control fault**" message.

The alert is triggered while driving when the fault is detected for the first time, and thereafter when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, for as long as the cause of the fault persists.

i If the fault is temporary, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

Malfunction confirmed during the permitted driving phase (between 685 miles and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))

If the fault indication is still displayed permanently after 31 miles (50 km) of driving, the fault in the SCR system is confirmed.
The AdBlue warning lamp flashes and a message is displayed ("**Emissions control fault: starting prevented in X miles (kms)**"), indicating the driving range in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds. The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the **engine starting prevention** system is triggered.

! Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Starting prevented

Every time the ignition is switched on, the message "**Emissions control fault: Starting prevented**" is displayed.

! **To restart the engine**
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Power indicator (Rechargeable hybrid)

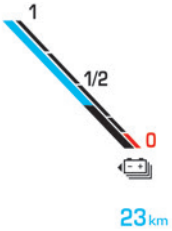
The power indicator shows in real time the power demanded from the vehicle.
There are 3 zones:

POWER **High power demand, using the combined capabilities of the petrol engine and the electric motor(s) (depending on version).**
The slider is located in this zone during more dynamic driving phases when high levels of performance are being demanded.

ECO **Optimal use of energy (internal combustion or electric).**
The slider is located in this zone when driving under electric power and when optimal use is being made of the petrol engine, both accessible by adopting a suitable driving style.
A symbol indicates the threshold at which the petrol engine will restart.
The driver can therefore moderate their acceleration to remain in electric driving mode.

CHARGE **Energy recovery for partly recharging the traction battery.**
The slider is located in this zone during deceleration: taking your foot off the accelerator pedal or braking.

Charge level indicator (Rechargeable hybrid)



The charge level of the traction battery and the remaining range in electric driving mode are permanently displayed when the vehicle is switched on.

! The range displayed depends on the use of the vehicle (type of driving and speed), the outside temperature and the activated comfort equipment.

Manual test

This function allows you to check certain indicators and display the alerts log.
It can be accessed via the "**Check/ Diagnostic**" button in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.
The following information is displayed on the instrument panel:
- Engine oil level.
- Next service due.
- Tyre pressures.

– Driving range associated with the AdBlue® and the SCR system (BlueHDi Diesel).
– Current alerts.

> This information is also displayed automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

Total distance recorder

The total distance recorder measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its initial registration.
With the ignition on, the total distance is displayed at all times. It remains displayed for 30 seconds after switching off the ignition. It is displayed when the driver's door is opened, and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

> When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (km or miles): the road speed must be displayed in the local country's official unit (km/h or mph).
> The unit is changed via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Lighting dimmer

This system allows the brightness of the instruments and controls to be adjusted to suit the ambient light level.

With DS CONNECT RADIO

▶ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.

▶ Select "**Brightness**".

▶ Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.
The settings are applied immediately.
▶ Press outside the settings window to exit.
You can also switch off the screen:

▶ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.

▶ Select "**Dark**".
The screen goes off completely.
▶ Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to turn it on.

With NAVIGATION

With the lamps switched on:

▶ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.
▶ Select "**OPTIONS**".

▶ Select "**Screen configuration**".
▶ Select the "**Brightness**" tab.

▶ Adjust the instrument panel and screen brightness by using the arrows or moving the slider.

▶ Press this button to save and exit.
You can also switch off the screen:

▶ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.

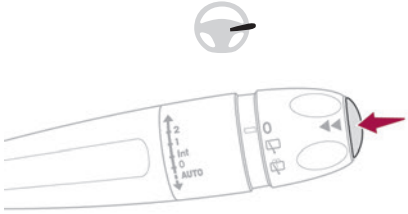
▶ Select "**Turn off screen**".
The screen goes off completely.
▶ Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to turn it on.

Trip computer

Displays information related to the current trip (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

Data displayed on the instrument panel

Trip computer data is permanently displayed when the "**Personal**" display mode is selected.
In all other display modes, pressing the end of the wiper control stalk will cause this data to appear temporarily in a specific window.
Displaying the different tabs



► Pressing the button located on the end of the wiper control stalk displays the following tabs in turn:

- Current information:
  - Total driving range (Petrol or Diesel).
  - Current consumption (Petrol or Diesel).
  - Time counter for Stop & Start (Petrol or Diesel).
  - Percentage of the current journey travelled in all-electric driving mode (Rechargeable hybrid).
- Trips "**1**" then "**2**":
  - Average speed.
  - Average fuel consumption.
  - Distance travelled.

Trip reset

► When the desired trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than 2 seconds.
Trips "**1**" and "**2**" are independent and are used in the same way.

Definitions

Range

(miles or km)

Distance that can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (based on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

This value may vary following a change in driving style or terrain, leading to a significant change in current fuel consumption.
When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.
After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).
Dashes appearing permanently in place of numbers while driving indicates a malfunction. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed at speeds above 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)

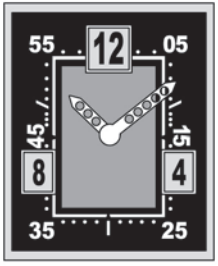
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter

(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with the Stop & Start function, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
The time counter is reset each time the ignition is switched on.

Clock



It is deployed automatically when the ignition is switched on and folds back automatically when the ignition is switched off.
The hands mechanism is synchronised with the time displayed on the touch screen.

! Do not fold the clock back manually - it may break!

Touch screen

This system gives access to the following elements:
– Permanent display of the time and outside temperature (a blue warning lamp appears if there is a risk of ice).
– Heating/air conditioning system controls.
– Vehicle functions and equipment setting menus.
– Audio system and telephone controls and display of related information.
– Display of visual manoeuvring aid functions (visual parking sensor information, Park Assist, etc.).
– Internet services and display of related information.
– Navigation system controls and display of related information (depending on version).

! **For safety reasons, always stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention.**
Some functions are not accessible while driving.

Recommendations

This screen is of the capacitive type.
– Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
– Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.
– Use a soft, clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Principles

► Use the buttons arranged below the touch screen to access the menus, then press the buttons that appear on the touch screen.
Some menus may display across two pages: press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the second page.

i After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

To deactivate/activate a function, select "**OFF**" or "**ON**".

	Configuring a function
	Access to additional information on the function
OK	Confirm
	Return to the previous page or confirm
	Audio system on/off
	Volume adjustment/mute

Information banner(s)

Certain information is displayed permanently in the touch screen banner(s).

DS CONNECT RADIO system upper banner

– Time and outside temperature (a blue warning lamp appears if there is a risk of ice).
– Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
– Reminder of the information in the **Radio Media** and **Telephone** menus.
– Notifications.
– Access to the **Settings** for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel (date/time, languages, units, etc.).

NAVIGATION system side banners

– Outside temperature (a blue warning lamp appears if there is a risk of ice).
– Access to the **Settings** for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel (date/time, languages, units, etc.).
– Notifications.
– Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
– Access to the heated/ventilated seat settings.
– Time.

Menus

Press the touch screen with three fingers to show all of the menu buttons.

For more information about the menus, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

Radio/Media

Climate
Settings for temperature, air flow, etc.
For more information on **Manual air conditioning** and **Dual-zone automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Navigation (Depending on equipment)

Driving or Vehicle (Depending on equipment)
Activation, deactivation and settings for certain functions.
The functions are organised in 2 tabs: "**Driving functions**" and "**Vehicle settings**".

Telephone

Applications
Display of available connected services and direct access to certain equipment of the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function.

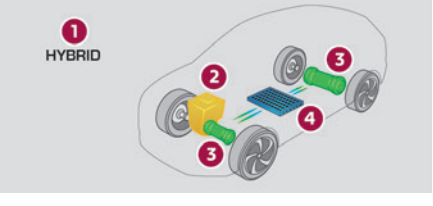
DS SENSORIAL DRIVE function
Customises the driving ambience settings.
For more information on the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Energy
Access to the rechargeable hybrid system features (energy flow, consumption statistics, deferred charging, eSave function).

Energy menu

Flow

The page shows the operation of the rechargeable hybrid system in real time.

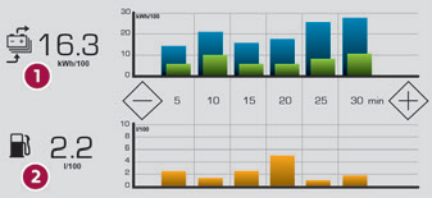


1. Active driving mode
2. Petrol engine
3. Electric motor(s)
4. Traction battery charge level

The energy flows have a colour for each type of driving:
- Blue: 100% electrical energy.
- Orange: energy from the petrol engine.
- Green: energy recovery.

Statistics

This page shows electrical energy and fuel consumption statistics.



1. Average electrical consumption for the current trip (kWh/100 km) and historical values:
- Blue bar chart: directly consumed energy supplied by the traction battery.
- Green bar chart: energy recovered during deceleration and braking, used to recharge the battery.

2. Average fuel consumption for the current trip (kWh/100 km) and historical values (orange bar chart).

► You can change the displayed time scale by pressing the - or + buttons.

A current trip is any trip of more than 20 minutes without switching off the ignition.

Charging

This page allows you to programme deferred charging.
For more information on **Charging the traction battery (Rechargeable hybrid)**, refer to the corresponding section.

eSave

The **eSave** function makes it possible to reserve all or part of the electrical energy in the traction battery for later use during a journey (e.g. driving in an urban area or in an area reserved for electric vehicles).

► Select the electric range to be reserved (**10 km**, **20 km** or the full range **MAX**) then activate the function by pressing **ON**.

Activation of the function is confirmed by the lighting of this indicator lamp on the instrument panel and the indication of the energy reserve in miles or kms.

► To use the energy reserve, choose the **Electric** driving mode in the mode selector.

! If the requested range exceeds the available range (not recommended), the internal combustion engine starts to recharge the traction battery up to the requested threshold. This leads to excessive fuel consumption.

Remote functions (Rechargeable hybrid)

Download on the App Store | GET IT ON Google Play

The following functions are available from the **MyDS App** application, which is accessible from a smartphone:

- Managing the traction battery charging (deferred charging).
- Managing the temperature pre-conditioning.
- Viewing the state of charge and range of the vehicle.

Installation procedure

► Download the **MyDS App** app from the appropriate online store for your smartphone.

► Create an account.

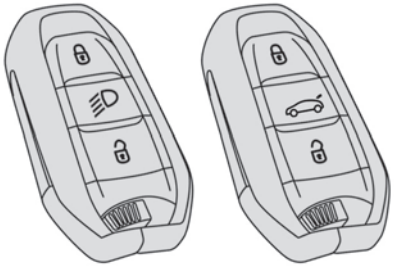
► Enter the vehicle's VIN (code beginning with "VF" on the vehicle registration certificate).

For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

i **Network coverage**
In order to be able to use the various remotely operable features, ensure that your vehicle is located in an area covered by the mobile network.
A lack of network coverage may prevent communication with the vehicle (for example, if it is in an underground car park). In such cases, the application will display a message indicating that the connection with the vehicle could not be established.

Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key,

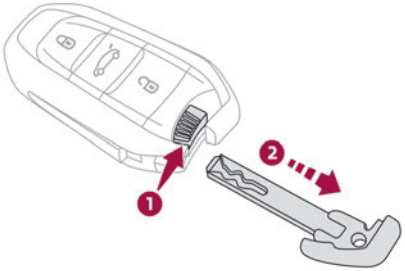
Remote control function



Depending on version, the remote control can be used to perform the following remote functions:
- Unlocking/Locking/Deadlocking the vehicle.
- Unlocking - Opening the boot.
- Remote operation of lighting.
- Folding/Unfolding the door mirrors.
- Activating/Deactivating the alarm.
- Locating the vehicle.
- Opening/Closing the windows.
- Closing the sunroof.
- Activating the vehicle's electronic immobiliser.

Built-in key

Depending on version, using the remote control built-in key, you can perform the following operations:
- Activation/Deactivation of the manual child lock.
- Activation/Deactivation of the front passenger airbag.
- Back-up Unlocking/Locking of the doors.



► To eject the key or put it back in place, pull and hold the button.

! Once the built-in key is ejected, always keep it with you to be able to carry out the corresponding back-up procedures.

Unlocking the vehicle

Selective unlocking (driver's door, boot) is configured in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Complete unlocking

► Press the unlocking button.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door and fuel filler/charging flap

► Press the unlocking button.

► Press it **again** to unlock the other doors and the boot.

The charging nozzle can be unplugged on the second press.

Complete or selective unlocking, and alarm deactivation (depending on version), is confirmed by the flashing of the direction indicators.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Opening the windows

Depending on version, holding the unlocking button pressed for more than 3 seconds opens the windows.

The windows stop when the button is released.

Selective unlocking and opening of the tailgate

By default, selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated and its motorised operation is activated.

► Press and hold this button to unlock the boot and, depending on version, trigger the motorised opening of the tailgate.

When selective unlocking of the tailgate is activated, the doors and the fuel filler flap remain locked.
If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the button unlocks the whole vehicle.

i If motorised operation of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the button partially opens the tailgate.
To lock the vehicle, it is necessary to close the tailgate again.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking

► Press the locking button.
The locking, and the activation of the alarm depending on version, is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators.
Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

i An access (door or boot) that is not properly closed prevents locking of the vehicle. However, if the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.
If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or boot are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be reactivated automatically.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also disables the central locking button.
The horn remains operational.
Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

► Press the locking button again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).
Closing the windows and sunroof
An audible signal sounds before the start of movement.

Maintaining pressure on the locking button for more than 3 seconds allows the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof to be closed to the desired position.
This operation also closes the sunroof blind.

! Ensure that no person or object could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof.
If, on versions with alarm, you want to leave the windows and/or sunroof partially open, you must first deactivate the interior volumetric alarm protection.
For more information on the **Alarm**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locating the vehicle

This function helps you to spot your vehicle from a distance, with the vehicle locked:
– The direction indicators flash for approximately 10 seconds.
– The door mirror spotlamps come on.
– The courtesy lamps come on.

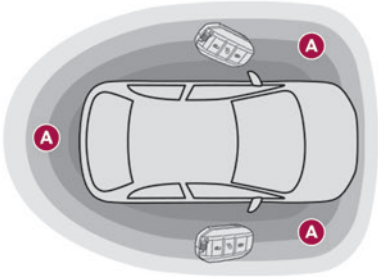
► Press this button.

Remote lighting of the lamps

Availability of this function depends on version.

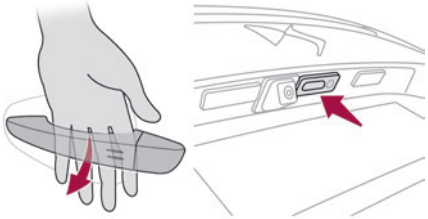
► Press this button. The sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps, number plate lamps and door mirror spotlamps come on for 30 seconds.
Pressing again before the end of the timed period switches off the lamps immediately.

Keyless Entry and Start



This system allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while carrying the electronic key on your person in the recognition zone **A**.

Unlocking the vehicle



Selective unlocking (driver's door, boot) is configured in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.
Selective unlocking is deactivated by default.

Complete unlocking

► Pass your hand behind the handle of one of the four doors or press the tailgate opening control.
If the motorised tailgate opening control is activated, this action triggers its automatic opening.

Opening the windows

Depending on version, keeping your hand behind the door handle or maintaining the press on the tailgate opening control allows the windows to be opened to the desired position.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door and fuel/charging flap

► Pass your hand behind the driver's door handle.

► To unlock the vehicle completely, pass your hand behind the handle of one of the passenger doors with the electronic key close to the passenger door, or press the tailgate opening control with the electronic key close to the rear of the vehicle.
Complete or selective unlocking, and deactivation of the alarm depending on version, is confirmed by the flashing of the direction indicators.
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

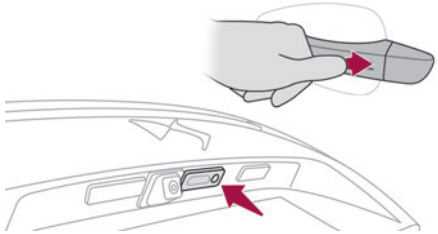
Selective unlocking of the tailgate

► Press the tailgate opening control to unlock just the boot.
The doors remain locked.

> i If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing this control also unlocks the doors.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



► Press the handle on one of the four doors (at the markings) or the locking control on the tailgate.
It is not possible to lock the vehicle if one of the electronic keys is left inside the vehicle.

Closing the windows and sunroof

Maintaining pressure on the door handle or the tailgate control allows the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof to be closed to the desired position.
This operation also closes the sunroof blind.

> ! Make sure that no item or person could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof.
> Pay particular attention to children when operating windows.

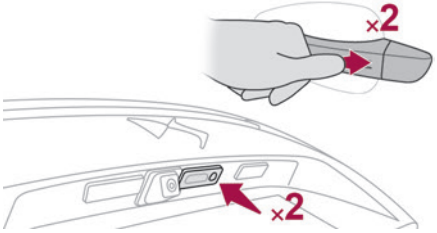
The locking, and the activation of the alarm depending on version, is confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators.

Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

! For safety and theft protection reasons, never leave the electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also disables the central locking button.
The horn remains operational.
Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



► Press the handle on one of the four doors (at the markings) or the locking control on the tailgate to lock the vehicle.
► Press it again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

i If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Startsystem has been left inside the vehicle, central locking will not take place. However, if the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.

i If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or boot are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be reactivated automatically.

i The automatic door mirror folding/unfolding function is configured via the touch screen's **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

! As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle, even for a short time, without taking the Keyless Entry and Start system's electronic key with you.
Be aware of the risk of theft of the vehicle if the key is present in one of the defined areas while the vehicle is unlocked.

! To preserve the battery charge in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are set to hibernation mode after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.
For more information on starting with the Keyless Entry and Start system, refer to the corresponding section.

i **Electrical interference**
The electronic key may not work if it is close to an electronic device (e.g. mobile telephone (switched on or on standby), laptop computer, strong magnetic fields). If this occurs, move the electronic key away from the electronic device.

Central locking

Manual

► Press this button to lock/unlock the vehicle (doors and boot) from inside the passenger compartment.
The indicator lamp comes on to confirm the central locking of the vehicle.

! Central locking does not take place if any of the doors are open.

i **When locking/deadlocking from the outside**
When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp flashes and the button is deactivated.
► After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
► After deadlocking, you must use the remote control, the "Keyless Entry and Start" system or the built-in key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic (anti-intrusion security)

The doors and boot lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).
To deactivate/reactivate this function (activated by default):
► Press the button until an audible signal is triggered and a confirmation message appears.

i **Transporting long or voluminous objects**
Press the central locking control to drive with the boot open and the doors locked.
Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the sound of the locks rebounding will be heard and an alert will be displayed.

Advice

! **Remote control**
The remote control is a sensitive, high-frequency device; avoid handling it in your pocket, due to the risk of unintentionally unlocking the vehicle.
Avoid pressing the remote control buttons while out of range of the vehicle, due to the risk of rendering the remote control inoperative. It would then be necessary to reset it.

! **Anti-theft protection**
Do not modify the electronic vehicle immobiliser, as this might result in malfunctions.

! **Locking the vehicle**
Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the passenger compartment in an emergency.
As a safety precaution, take the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

i **Purchasing a second-hand vehicle**
Have the key codes memorised by a dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones able to start the vehicle.

Back-up procedures

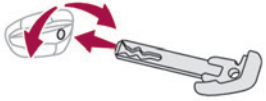
Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Go to a dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate and your personal identification documents.
The dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code, enabling a new key to be ordered.

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use this procedure in the following situations:
- Remote control battery discharged.
- Remote control malfunction.
- Vehicle battery discharged.
- Vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, change the remote control battery.
In the second case, reinitialise the remote control.
Refer to the corresponding sections.



► Insert the key in the door lock.
► Turn the key towards the front/rear to unlock/lock the vehicle.

► Turn the key towards the rear again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

i If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be activated when locking with the key.
If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds when the door is opened; switch on the ignition to stop it.

Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:
- Central locking malfunction.
- Battery disconnected or discharged.

! In the event of a malfunction of the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Driver's door

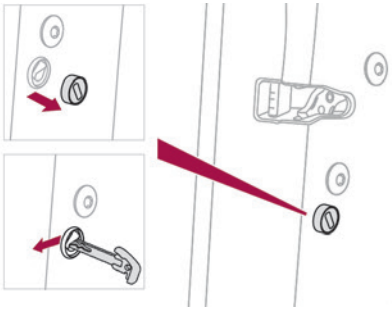
► Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it, or towards the front to unlock it.

Passenger doors

Unlocking

► Pull the interior door opening control.

Locking

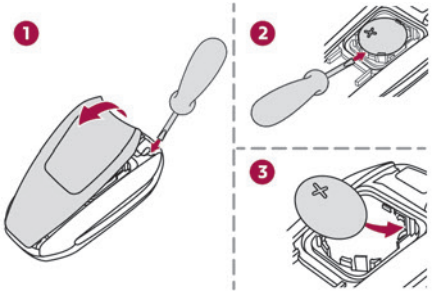


► Open the doors.
► For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.
Refer to the corresponding section.
► **Remove the black cap**, located on the edge of the door, using the key.
► Insert the key into the socket without forcing it, then turn the latch towards the inside of the door.
► Remove the key and refit the black cap.
► Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Changing the battery

A message is displayed on the instrument panel when the battery needs changing.

Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.



► Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and lift the cover.
► Remove the flat battery from its housing.
► Put the new battery in place, respecting the polarity. Start by inserting it into the contacts located in the corner, then clip the cover onto the unit.
► Reinitialise the remote control.
For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

e Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

! This equipment contains a button type battery.
Do not swallow the battery. Risk of chemical burns!

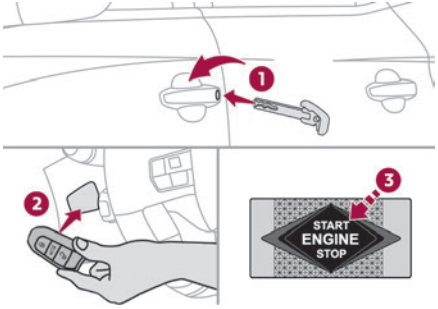
Swallowing the battery can cause serious internal burning in only 2 hours and can be fatal.
If batteries have been swallowed or inserted into a part of the body, seek immediate medical advice.
Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children.
If the battery compartment does not close properly, stop using the product and keep it out of the reach of children.

! Risk of explosion if the battery is replaced with an incorrect type!
Replace the battery with the same type.

! Risk of explosion or leaking of inflammable liquid or gas!
Do not use in/store in/place in an environment where the temperature is extremely high or where the pressure is extremely low due to very high altitude.
Do not try to burn, crush or cut a used battery.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.



► Insert the mechanical key (incorporated into the remote control) into the lock to open the vehicle.
► Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
► **With an automatic gearbox,** while in mode **P**, depress the brake pedal.
► Switch on the ignition by pressing the "**START/STOP**" button.
If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Doors

Opening

From outside

► After unlocking the vehicle or with the "Keyless Entry and Start" system electronic key in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

i When selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

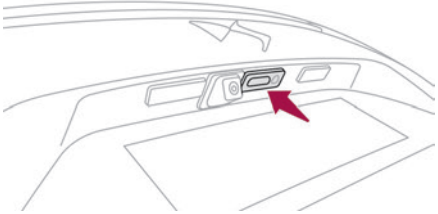
From inside

► Pull the interior opening control of a door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

i With selective unlocking activated:
– Opening the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked).
– Opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

Boot

Opening the tailgate



► With the vehicle unlocked or with the electronic key in the recognition zone, press the central tailgate control.

► Raise the tailgate.

i When selective unlocking is activated, the electronic key must be close to the rear of the vehicle.

! The tailgate is not designed to hold a bicycle carrier.

Closing the tailgate

► Lower the tailgate using the interior grips.
► Release the grips and press down on the outside of the tailgate to close it.

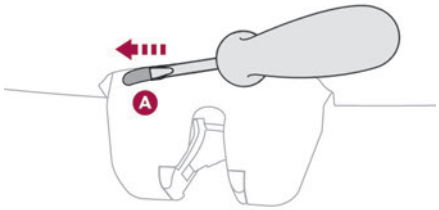
! In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing the tailgate, have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

Unlocking

► Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



► Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the boot.
► Move the latch to the left.

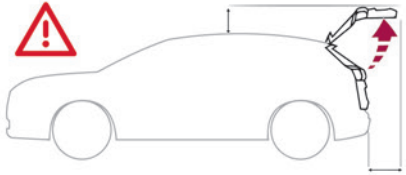
Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

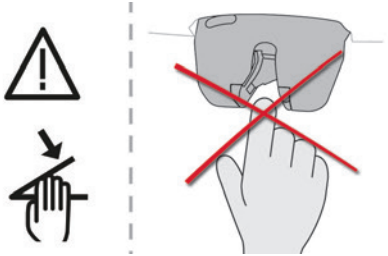
i In the event of a fault with the central locking system, it is essential to disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure complete locking of the vehicle.

Motorised tailgate

(Depending on version)
The motorised tailgate must only be operated with the vehicle stationary.



! Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the motorised tailgate.



! Never insert a finger in the locking system of the motorised tailgate - risk of serious injury!

Anti-pinch

The motorised tailgate has an obstacle detection system that automatically interrupts and reverses its movement by a few degrees, to allow the obstacle to be cleared.
Please note that this anti-pinch system is not active at the end of the closing travel (around 1 cm from completely closed).

! To avoid the risk of injury through pinching or trapping, before and during operation of the motorised tailgate:
– ensure that there is no-one close to the rear of the vehicle.

– monitor the activity of the rear passengers, particularly any children.

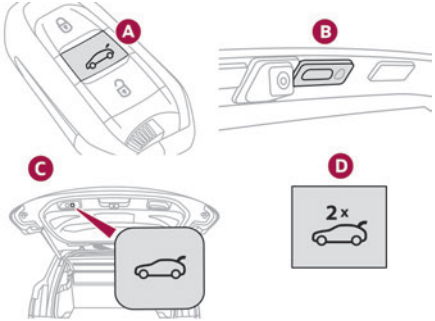
Bicycle carrier/Towing device

The motorised tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.
When installing a bicycle carrier on the towing device with connection of the cable to the trailer socket, the motorised operation of the tailgate will be automatically deactivated.

! If using a towing device or bicycle carrier not recommended by the Manufacturer, it is essential to deactivate the motorised operation of the tailgate.

Motorised operation

Motorised operation of the tailgate is set via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.



There are several ways of operating the tailgate:

A. Using the Keyless Entry and Start system's electronic key
B. Using the exterior tailgate control
C. Using the interior tailgate control*
D. Using the control on the dashboard*

Opening/Closing

► A long press on the central button **A** of the electronic key.
or
► A short press on the exterior tailgate control **B**, with the electronic key on your person.
or
► A short press on the interior tailgate control **C** (closing only).
or
► Two consecutive presses on the control **D** on the dashboard.

i The tailgate opens, either completely by default, or to the position memorised beforehand.
If motorised operation is not activated, these actions release the tailgate (partially-open position).
When the vehicle is locked, the request to open the boot with one of the controls **A** or **B** unlocks the vehicle, or only the boot if selective unlocking is activated, prior to the opening of the boot.

i It is possible to interrupt the operation of the tailgate at any point.
Pressing one of these controls again interrupts the movement that is underway.
Following the interruption of a movement, pressing one of these controls again reverses the movement.

Memorising an opening position

To **memorise** a position, in order to limit the motorised tailgate opening angle:
► move the tailgate to the desired position manually or by pressing the button.

* Depending on version.

► press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds (memorisation is confirmed by a brief audible signal).

i Memorising is not available until the height of opening is more than or equal to 1 metre between the low position and the high position of the tailgate.

To **delete** the memorised position:
► open the tailgate to any position.
► press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds (deletion is confirmed by a long audible signal).

Manual operation

The tailgate can be manoeuvred by hand, even with motorised operation activated.
The tailgate must be stationary.
When opening and closing the motorised tailgate manually, there is no assistance from gas struts. Resistance to opening and closing is therefore entirely normal.

i Repeatedly opening and closing the motorised tailgate can cause overheating of its electric motor, after which opening and closing will not be possible.
Allow at least 10 minutes for the electric motor to cool down before operating the tailgate again.
If you are unable to wait, operate it manually.

Manual closing of the motorised tailgate in case of failure

This operation is **only necessary in the case of failure of the tailgate motor**.
If the failure originates from the battery, it is recommended to recharge it or change it with the tailgate **closed**.
In this situation, a significant force may be needed to close the tailgate.
► Close it gently without slamming, as slowly as possible, by pushing at the centre of the tailgate.

! Do not lower the tailgate by pushing at one of its sides - risk of damage!

Precautions in use

i **In wintry conditions**
To avoid any operating problems, remove the snow or wait until the ice melts before requesting motorised opening of the tailgate.

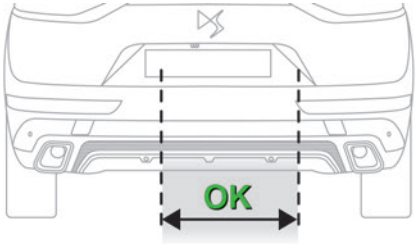
i **When washing**
When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, do not forget to lock and move away from the vehicle to prevent any risk of unwanted opening.

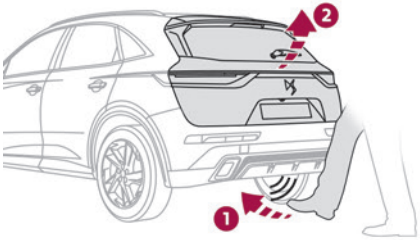
Hands-free function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access)

(Depending on version)
With the electronic key on your person, this function allows the motorised tailgate to be opened, closed or stopped via a "kicking" movement under the rear bumper.
The "Hands-Free Tailgate/Access" function is set via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

! Ensure that you are steady on your feet before performing the "kicking" movement.
Take care not to touch the exhaust system which may be hot - risk of burns!

i **Rechargeable hybrid vehicles**
The function is not available when the vehicle is connected.





► Position yourself behind the vehicle by the number plate and perform a "kicking" movement in the "**OK**" detection zone.

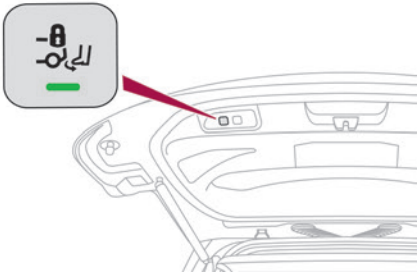
! The detection zone is not centred with respect to the number plate.

The "kicking" movement must be given forwards, smoothly, not too fast and with a vertical movement from low to high. Raise the foot sufficiently and remove it immediately.
Recognition of the "kicking" movement is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators followed by an audible signal.

! "Sideward kicking" movements do not work. If the "kicking" movement has not been detected, wait at least 2 seconds before repeating the movement.
Do not perform repetitive "kicking" movements.

If the motorised tailgate has not started to open, check that:
- the function is activated.
- the electronic key is on your person, outside the vehicle in the rear recognition area.
- the "kicking" movement was performed in the detection zone, close enough to the bumper.
- the foot was removed from the bumper quickly enough.

Automatic locking with the hands-free function



► To activate/deactivate the automatic locking of the vehicle when closing the tailgate with the hands-free function, press this button.

The green indicator lamp comes on to indicate that the function is activated.

Recommendations on the hands-free function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access)

If it does not work, check that the electronic key is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic interference (e.g. smartphone).
The function may be deactivated or affected if there is rain or snow.
The function may not work correctly with a prosthetic leg.
In some circumstances, the tailgate may open or close by itself, particularly when:
- hitching up or removing a trailer;
- fitting or removing a bicycle carrier;
- loading or unloading bicycles on/from a bicycle carrier;
- depositing or lifting something behind the vehicle;
- an animal approaches the rear bumper;
- washing the vehicle;
- maintenance is performed on the vehicle;
- accessing the spare wheel.

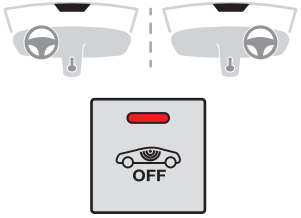
To avoid such operating problems, keep the electronic key away from the recognition zone or deactivate the hands-free function.

! **Towing device**
The installation of a towing device may disturb the detection system.

To avoid unintentionally opening the tailgate while operating the towing device:
► remove the electronic key from the recognition zone, with the tailgate closed.
For more information on the **Towing device with quickly detachable towball**, refer to the corresponding section.

Alarm

(Depending on version)



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

Exterior perimeter monitoring

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the bonnet, for example.

Interior volumetric monitoring

The system checks for any variation in volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Anti-tilt monitoring

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.
The alarm goes off if the vehicle is lifted or moved.

i When the vehicle is parked, the alarm will not be triggered if the vehicle is knocked.

Self-protection function

The system checks whether any of its components are out of service.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring is put out of service or damaged.

! **Work on the alarm system**
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

► Switch off the ignition and exit the vehicle.
► Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the remote control or with the Keyless Entry and Start system.
When the monitoring system is active, the red indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.
The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

! If an opening (door, boot or bonnet) is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation

► Press one of the remote control unlocking buttons:

short press
long press

or
► Unlock the vehicle with the Keyless Entry and Start system.
The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

i If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically reactivated.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid the unwanted triggering of the alarm, in certain cases such as:
- Slightly open window.
- Washing the vehicle.
- Changing a wheel.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Transport on a ship or ferry.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

► Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until its red indicator lamp is on fixed.
► Get out of the vehicle.
► Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system.
Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the button's red indicator lamp flashes once every second.

i To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out after each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

► Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off.
► Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system.
The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.
Depending on the country of sale, certain monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times consecutively.
When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system, rapid flashing of the red indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:
► Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
► Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
► Switch on the ignition; this stops the alarm.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

► Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (built-in the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

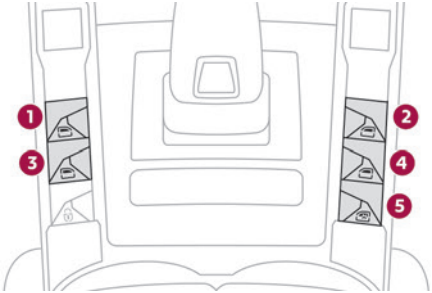
Automatic activation

(Depending on version)
The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.
► To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, the fixed lighting of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a system malfunction.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric windows



1. Left-hand front
2. Right-hand front
3. Left-hand rear
4. Right-hand rear
5. Deactivation of electric window controls located by rear seats
   Deactivation of the rear door opening controls (electric child lock)*

Manual operation

► To open/close the window, press/pull the switch without passing the point of resistance; the window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

► To open/close the window, press/pull the switch past its resistance point: the window opens/closes completely when the switch is released.
Operating the switch again stops the movement of the window.

i Window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition or after locking the vehicle. After that time, the controls are disabled. To reactivate them, switch on the ignition or unlock the vehicle.

Anti-pinch

If the window meets an obstacle while rising, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

Deactivating the rear controls for the rear electric windows

For your children's safety, press control **5** to deactivate the rear electric window controls.
The indicator lamp for the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming activation. With the ignition on, it remains on as long as the child lock remains activated.
The rear electric windows can still be controlled using the driver's controls.

! For versions fitted with an electric child lock, this control also deactivates the interior rear door controls.
For more information on the **Child lock**, refer to the corresponding section.

Reinitialising the electric windows

After reconnecting the battery, or in the event of abnormal window movement, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.
The anti-pinch function is disabled during the following sequence of operations.
For each window:
► Lower the window fully, then raise it; it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.
► Continue to pull the control for at least one second after the window reaches the closed position.

! If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the relevant control.
When the driver operates the passengers' electric window controls, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.

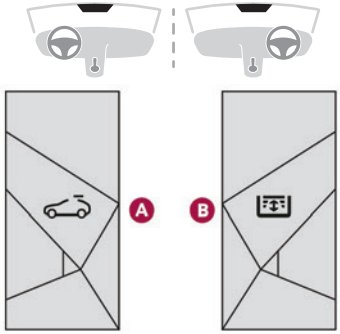
* Depending on version.

It is important to ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Pay particular attention to children when operating the windows.
Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing windows remotely using the electronic key.
Do not put your head or arms through the open windows when the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

Panoramic sunroof

The panoramic sunroof consists of a movable glass panel that slides over the roof and a blind that can be opened independently. Opening the sunroof automatically opens the blind.

► To operate the panoramic sunroof or the blind, use the buttons in the roof console.



A. Sunroof control
B. Sunroof blind control

The sunroof or blind can be operated when the ignition is turned on (if the battery is charged enough), with the engine running, in STOP mode of Stop & Start, and up to 45 seconds after turning off the ignition or after locking the vehicle.

Precautions

! Do not put your head or arms through the sunroof while the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

! Ensure that any luggage or accessories carried on the roof bars do not interfere with the movement of the sunroof.
Do not place heavy loads on the movable glass panel of the sunroof.

! If the sunroof is wet, following a rain shower or washing the vehicle, wait until it is completely dry before operating it.
Do not operate the sunroof if it is covered by snow or ice - risk of damage!
Use only plastic scrapers to remove snow or ice from the sunroof.

! Regularly check the condition of the sunroof seals (e.g. presence of dust, dead leaves).
If using a car wash, check first that the roof is correctly closed and keep the high-pressure jet at least 30 centimetres from the seals.

! Never leave the vehicle with the sunroof open.

Operation

When opening the sunroof fully, the movable glass moves to a partially open position, then slides over the roof. Any intermediate position is possible.

i Depending on the speed of the vehicle, the partially open position may vary to improve the acoustics.

! Before operating the sunroof or blind control buttons, ensure that no object or person might prevent the movement.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the sunroof or blind.
If something is trapped when operating the sunroof or blind, you should reverse the movement of the sunroof or blind by pressing the control in question.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof and blind correctly.

Anti-pinch system

If the sunroof or blind encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed.
The roof anti-pinch system is designed to be effective at speeds of up to 75 mph (120 km/h).

Opening/Closing

► To open the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the rear of the vehicle.
► To close the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the front of the vehicle.

Operation of buttons

► Pressing a button beyond its point of resistance directly opens or closes the sunroof or blind fully.
► Pressing the button again stops the current movement.
► When holding a button (without going beyond the point of resistance), the movement of the sunroof or blind stops when this button is released.
► When the sunroof is closed: pressing once without passing the point of resistance moves it to a partially open position.
► When the sunroof is partially open: pressing once without passing the point of resistance opens or closes it fully.

i The sunroof and windows, then the blind, can be closed by holding down the door locking control. The manoeuvre stops as soon as the locking control is released.

i Closing of the blind is limited by the position of the sunroof: the blind cannot go further than the front of the movable glass. During simultaneous movements of the sunroof and blind, the blind automatically stops or resumes movement depending on the position of the sunroof.

Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery or in the event of a fault or jerky movement of the sunroof or blind, reinitialisation is required.
► Check that nothing is interfering with the sunroof or blind and that the seals are clean.
► With the ignition on, fully close the sunroof and blind.
► Press and hold the front part of button **A**, until the sunroof and blind move slightly, then hold for a further 1 second before releasing.
► Wait 2 seconds and then press and hold the front part of button **A**. The blind and the sunroof will open and close, one after the other. When both are completely closed again, hold for a further 2 seconds and release.

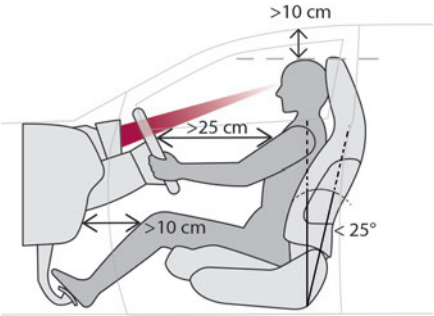
i If there is an operating fault, restart the whole procedure.

Driving position

Correct seating position

Adopting a good driving position contributes to improving driver comfort and protection.
It also optimises interior and exterior visibility as well as access to controls.
Certain seat adjustments described in this section depend on the trim level and the country in which the vehicle is sold.

Driver's side



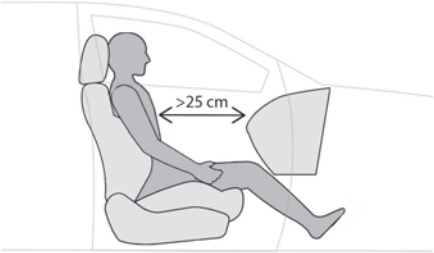
Sit fully back in the seat with your pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest.
Adjust the seat cushion height so that your eyes are level with the centre of the windscreen.
The head should be at a minimum distance of 10 cm from the roof.

Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so that you can fully depress the pedals with legs slightly flexed.
The distance between the knees and the dashboard should be at least 10 cm, for easy access to the dashboard controls.
Adjust the backrest angle to as vertical a position as possible; never tilt it more than 25°.
Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of the head.
Adjust the length of the seat cushion to support your thighs.
Adjust the lumbar support so that it conforms to the shape of the spine.
Adjust the steering wheel reach so that it is at least 25 cm from the sternum and you can hold it with your arms slightly bent.
Adjust the steering wheel height so that it does not obstruct the information displayed on the instrument panel.

! As a safety precaution, adjust the seats only when the vehicle is stationary.

i **Electrically-adjustable seats**
Switch the ignition on to enable the adjustments to be made.

Passenger's side



Sit fully back in the seat with the pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest.
Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so that you are at a distance of at least 25 cm from the dashboard.
Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of the head.

Before moving off

Adjust the interior and exterior door mirrors to reduce blind spots.
Fasten the seat belt: place the diagonal belt in the middle of the shoulder and adjust the lap belt so that it is tightened across the pelvis.
Ensure that all passengers have fastened their seat belts correctly.

i **Electric door mirrors**
Switch the ignition on to enable the adjustments to be made.

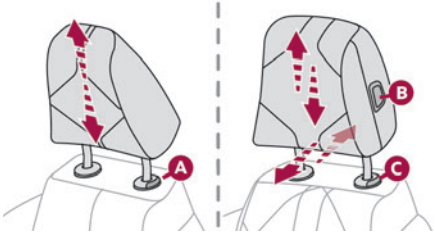
When driving

Maintain a good driving position and hold the steering wheel with both hands at the 'quarter to three' position, so that you can easily and quickly reach the controls behind and near the steering wheel.

! Never adjust the seats or steering wheel when driving.
Always keep your feet on the floor.

Front seats

Front head restraints



Adjusting the height

Upwards:

► Pull the head restraint up to the desired position; you can feel the head restraint clicking into position.

Downwards:

► Depending on equipment, press lug **A** or button **B** and then, while still pressing, lower the head restraint.

i The head restraint is correctly adjusted when its upper edge is level with the top of the head.

Adjusting the angle

(Depending on equipment)

Forwards:

► move the lower part of the head restraint forwards.

Rearwards:

► press and hold button **B** and push the lower part of the head restraint rearwards.

Removing a head restraint

► Pull the head restraint fully up.
► Depending on equipment, press lug **A** or **C** to release the head restraint and raise it fully.
► Stow the head restraint securely.

Refitting a head restraint

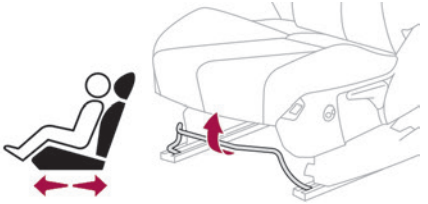
► Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest.
► Push the head restraint fully down.
► If the vehicle is so equipped, press lug **A**or **C** to release the head restraint and push it down.
► Adjust the height of the head restraint.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Manually-adjustable seats

Longitudinal

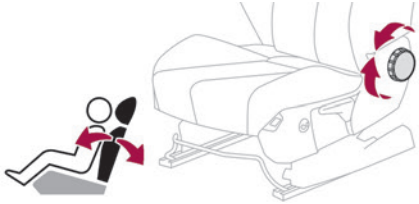


► Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
► Release the control bar to lock the seat in position on one of the notches.

Height

► Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, until you obtain the position required.

Backrest angle



► Turn the knob to obtain the desired angle.

Electrically-adjustable seats

i To avoid draining the battery, carry out these adjustments with the engine running.

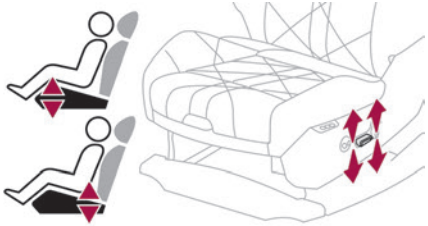
Longitudinal

► Push the control forwards or backwards to slide the seat.

Backrest angle

► Tilt the control forwards or rearwards.

Cushion height and angle



► Tilt the rear of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
► Tilt the front of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

Additional adjustments

Electric lumbar adjustment

"2-way" adjustment

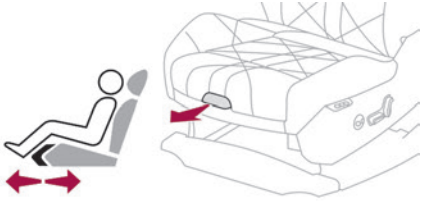
► Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.

"4-way" adjustment

The control allows independent adjustment of the depth and vertical position of the lumbar support.

► Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
► Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the lumbar support area.

Seat cushion length



► Pull the handle forwards to release the cushion, then move the front part of the cushion forwards or backwards.

Seat cushion angle

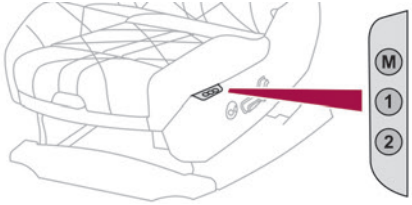
This electric adjustment control is present on "AGR" certified manually-adjustable seats.

► Press and hold the front or rear of the button to raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion.

Memorising driving positions

Associated with the electrically-adjusted driver's seat, this function allows two driving positions to be memorised, to make these adjustments easier if there are frequent driver changes.

It records the electric adjustments made to the seat and door mirrors.



Using buttons M/1/2

► Enter the vehicle and switch the ignition on.
► Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.
► Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within 4 seconds.
An audible signal confirms the memorisation.
Memorising a new position cancels the previous position.

Recalling a stored position

> ! While the seat is moving, take care that no person or object hinders the automatic movement of the seat.

With the ignition on or engine running

► Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.
An audible signal sounds when adjustment is complete.
You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat adjustment controls.
A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.

The recalling of stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Welcome function

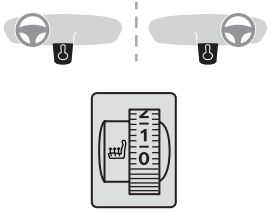
The welcome function makes it easier to get in and out of the vehicle.
After switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door, the front seat moves backwards automatically and then stays in this position, ready for the next entry into the vehicle.
When switching on the ignition, the front seat moves forwards to the stored driving position.

> ! While the seat is moving, take care that no person or object hinders the automatic movement of the seat.

Heated seats

The function is active only with the engine running.
The type and location of the controls depend on the vehicle configuration.

Heated seats with DS CONNECT RADIO



The control knob is located in the central storage compartment.
▶ Turn the knob to switch on and select a setting:
- 0 = off.
- 1 = low.
- 2 = medium.
- 3 = high.

Heated seats with NAVIGATION

The control buttons are displayed in the side banners of the touch screen.
▶ Press the button corresponding to your seat.
▶ Each press changes the level of heating; the corresponding number of indicator lamps come on (low/medium/high).
▶ Press the button again until all the indicator lamps are off.
The status of the function is saved when the ignition is switched off.

Heated and ventilated seats with NAVIGATION

The control buttons are displayed permanently in the side banners of the touch screen.
▶ Press one of these buttons to display the heating and ventilation settings page for the front seats.
In the settings page:
▶ Press this button to activate the heating function of the corresponding seat.
▶ Press this button to activate the ventilation function of the corresponding seat.
▶ Each press of a button changes the level of heating or ventilation; the corresponding number of indicator lamps come on (low/medium/high).
▶ To deactivate, press the button again until all the indicator lamps are off.
The status of the function is saved when the ignition is switched off.

e Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

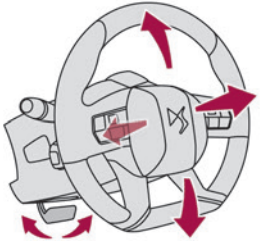
! Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).
To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:
– Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
– Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
– Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
– Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

Multipoint massage

System with a choice of type of massage and adjustment of its intensity.
This system operates with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of the Stop & Start.
The massage settings are adjusted via the touch screen.
The system is switched on, either directly using the button on the front seat, or by activating a personalised ambience with the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function.
Using the button on the front seat:
▶ Press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.
The system is immediately activated with the last settings used and the settings page is displayed on the touch screen.
If the settings suit you and you make no changes, the display returns to its original state.
The multipoint massages are also managed by the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function.
For more information on the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function, refer to the corresponding section.
To modify the settings:
▶ Select another type of massage from the five offered.

► Select a massage intensity from the three preset levels: "**1**" (Low), "**2**" (Normal) or "**3**" (High).
The changes are applied immediately.
Once activated, the system starts a one hour massage cycle, made up of sequences of 6 minutes of massage followed by 3 minutes at rest.
The system automatically stops at the end of the cycle; the button's indicator lamp goes off.

Steering wheel adjustment



► When stationary, pull the control to release the steering wheel.
► Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
► Push the control to lock the steering wheel.

! For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Adjustment

► Turn control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
► Move the control in any of the four directions to adjust.
► Return the control to the central position.

! For optimum safety, adjust the mirrors to reduce the "blind spot".
The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

Automatic: lock the vehicle using the electronic key.

Manual: with the ignition on, move control **A** downwards.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Unfolding

Automatic: unlock the vehicle using the electronic key.

Manual: with the ignition on, move control **A** upwards.
The mirrors can be folded manually if necessary.

i The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors with the remote control can be set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.
Fold the mirrors when putting your vehicle through an automatic car wash.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

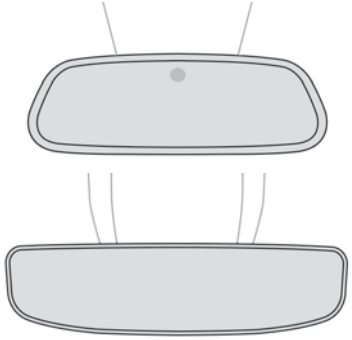
Depending on version, this function allows to automatically tilt the mirrors downwards to assist with parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.
With the engine running, on engaging reverse gear, the mirror glasses tilt downwards.
They return to their initial position:
- A few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.
- Once the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When the engine is switched off.

This function is set via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Demisting/Defrosting

The demisting/defrosting of the door mirrors works with the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen.
For more information on **Rear screen demisting/defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Electrochrome interior rear view mirror



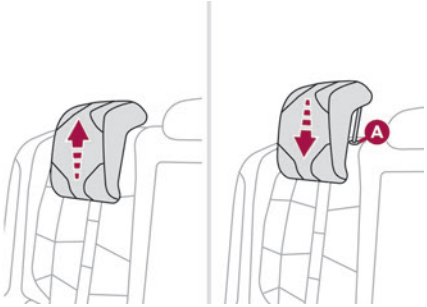
The electrochrome system uses a sensor that detects the level of exterior brightness and that coming from the rear of the vehicle, in order to automatically and gradually switch between day and night usage.

To ensure optimum visibility while manoeuvring, the mirror automatically brightens when reverse gear is engaged. The system is deactivated if the load in the boot exceeds the height of the load space cover or if the load space cover has items placed on it.

Rechargeable hybrid vehicles
An LED, located below the interior rear view mirror and visible from outside the vehicle, lights up blue to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in **Electric** mode (depending on country of sale).

Rear seats

Rear head restraints



They have two positions:

- A **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
  ► Pull the head restraint fully up.
- A **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
  ► Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

The rear head restraints can be removed.

Removing a head restraint

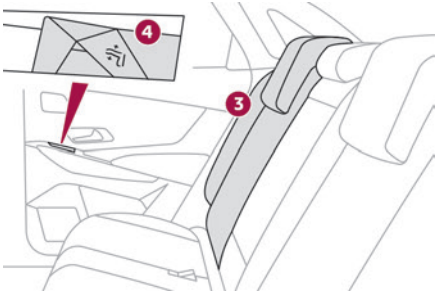
► Pull the head restraint fully up.
► Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.

Refitting a head restraint

► Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding backrest.
► Push the head restraint fully down.
► Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; the head restraints should be in place and in the high position.
The head restraint for the centre seat and those for the outer seats are not interchangeable.

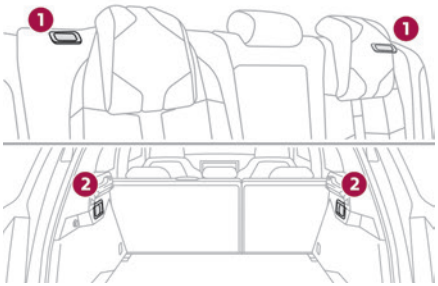
Backrest angle



► To straighten or recline the backrest **3**, press control **4** or pull it into the desired position.

! When adjusting the backrest with the boot loaded, check that no object might hinder the movement of the backrest - risk of damaging the backrest!

Folding the backrests



Each section of the backrest has two release controls:

- A grip **1** on the outer edge of the backrest.
- A lever **2** on the boot side trim.

! The backrests should only be manoeuvred when the vehicle is stationary.

First steps:

► Lower the head restraints.

► Lift up the rear armrest.

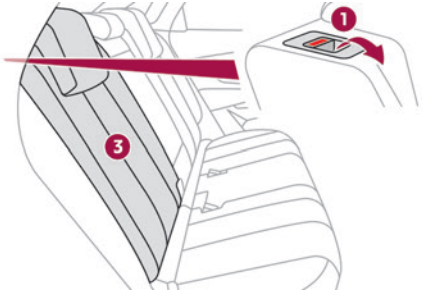
► If necessary, move the front seats forward.

► Check that no person or object might interfere with the folding of the backrests (e.g. clothing, luggage).

► Check that the outer seat belts are lying flat on the backrests.

i The folding of the backrest is accompanied by a slight lowering of the corresponding cushion.
To obtain a flat surface, it is necessary to place the adjustable boot floor in the high position.
When the backrest is released, the red indicator in the release grip is visible.

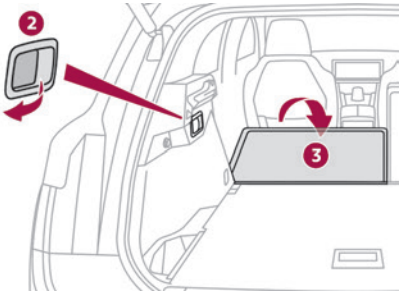
Folding from the passenger compartment



► Press the backrest release grip **1**.

► Guide the backrest **3** down to the horizontal position.

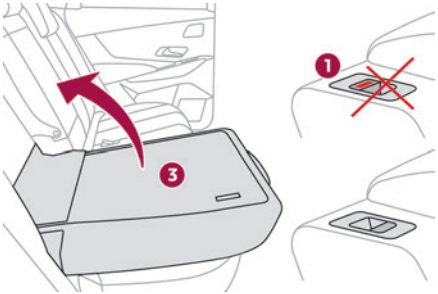
Folding from the boot



► Pull the backrest release lever **2** towards you. The backrest **3** folds fully onto the cushion.

Repositioning the backrests

! First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.



► Straighten the backrest **3** and push it firmly to latch it into place.
► Check that the red indicator is no longer visible in the release grip **1**.
► Ensure that the outer seat belts were not trapped during the operation.

! Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an accident.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forwards - risk of serious injury!

DS SENSORIAL DRIVE function

This function allows the driving ambiences to be managed.
Specific system settings are offered for each ambience.
These ambiences can be personalised via the touch screen.

Content of an ambience

An ambience is defined by the settings for each of the following systems:

- passenger compartment ambience lighting,
(activation / deactivation, brightness adjustment and choice of colour).
- sound ambience,
(choice of predetermined settings for the audio system equaliser).
- multipoint massage,
(for the driver and passenger seats: activation / deactivation, choice of massage type and its intensity).
- driving modes,
(choice of driving mode).

Accessing the DS SENSORIAL DRIVE function home page

Direct access by this button
or
Access via the Applications menu

► Select "**DS SENSORIAL DRIVE**".

Activating an ambience

► Select an ambience: "**Cashmere**" or "**Titanium**".
Depending on the settings made for the ambience, the systems are immediately activated.

Deactivating an ambience

► Press on "**Deactivate ambience**".
or
► Select the other ambience.
The ambience is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Personalising an ambience

► Select the ambience to activate it.
► Press on "**Settings**" to display the settings page for the ambience.
► Select a system for which you wish to modify the settings.
► After making the modifications, press any area of the screen outside the system settings window to return to the ambience settings page.
► After making all the desired setting modifications, press on "**Save settings**".
The modifications are immediately taken into account.

i It is possible to temporarily modify an ambience at any time, by modifying the settings for one or more of the systems

managed in the ambience, without going via the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function.
For example, it is possible to deactivate or modify the intensity of the current massage by pressing the massage activation button on the seat or activate / deactivate the passenger compartment ambience lighting from the **Driving / Vehicle** menu.
In this case, the new settings will not be saved as part of the current ambience.

Heating and Ventilation

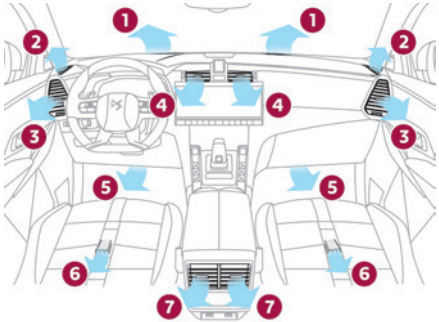
Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the exterior, via the grille located at the base of the windscreen, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

Depending on version, the controls are accessible in the **Climate** touch screen menu or are grouped together on the centre console panel.

Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/de-icing vents
2. Front side window demisting/de-icing vents
3. Adjustable and closable side air vents
4. Adjustable and closable central air vents
5. Air outlets to the front footwells
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells
7. Adjustable and closable air vents, with blower (depending on version)

Advice

Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

► To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.

► Do not cover the sunshine sensor located on the dashboard; this sensor is used to regulate the automatic air conditioning system.
► Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.
► If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
When towing a large load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.

Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

► Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Its specific active additive helps protect against polluting gases and bad smells.
► To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Manufacturer's service schedule.

Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
For more information on the **Stop & Start** system, refer to the corresponding section.

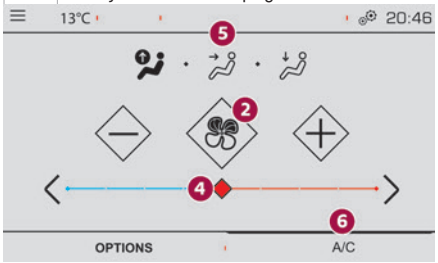
Rechargeable hybrid vehicles

Intensive use of the air conditioning reduces the vehicle range in **Electric** mode.

Manual air conditioning

This air conditioning system only operates with the engine running.

Press the **Climate** menu button to display the system controls page.



1. Automatic Visibility programme
2. Adjusting the air flow
   System switch-off
3. Interior air recirculation
4. Adjusting the temperature
5. Adjusting the air distribution
6. Air conditioning on/off

Temperature adjustment

► Press one of the buttons **4** to decrease (blue) or increase (red) the temperature level.

Air flow adjustment

► Press one of the buttons **2** to increase (+) or decrease (-) the speed of the ventilation fan.

The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased. When the air flow is reduced to a minimum, ventilation stops.

Adjusting the air distribution

► Press the buttons **5** to adjust the air flow distribution inside the passenger compartment.

Windscreen and side windows

Central and side air vents

Footwells

The lighting of the button indicates that air is being blown in the specified direction.
It is possible to activate all three buttons simultaneously, for uniform distribution throughout the passenger compartment.

Automatic Visibility programme

For more information on button **1**, refer to the "**Front Demisting/De-icing**" section.

Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed:
- It lowers the temperature in summer.
- It increases the effectiveness of the demisting, in winter, above 3°C.

► Press button **6** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

> i Air conditioning does not operate when the air flow is deactivated.
> To obtain cool air more quickly, enable interior air recirculation for a brief period. Then return to the intake of exterior air.
> Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity or misting).

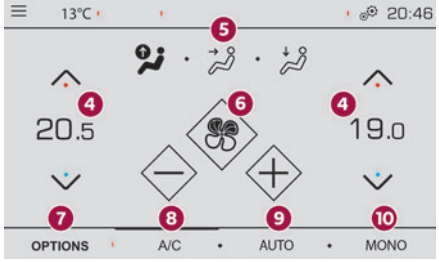
Switching the system off

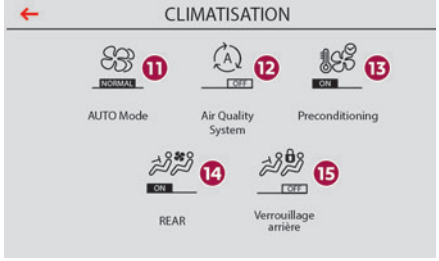
► Press button **2**.
Its indicator lamp comes on and all of the other indicator lamps for the system go off.
This action deactivates all of the functions of the air conditioning system.
The temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning

The air conditioning operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls can be accessed with the ignition on.
Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are automatic.

Press the **Climate** menu button to display the system controls page.





1. Automatic Visibility programme
2. System switch-off
3. Interior air recirculation
4. Temperature adjustment
5. Air distribution adjustment
6. Air flow adjustment
7. Access to the secondary page
8. Air conditioning on/off
9. Automatic Comfort programme on/off
10. Mono-zone/Dual-zone
11. Selection of setting for the Automatic Comfort programme (Soft/Normal/Fast)
12. "Air Quality System" function (AQS) (depending on version)
13. Passenger compartment temperature pre-conditioning (depending on version)
14. "REAR" function (depending on version)
15. Locking the remote settings controls (depending on version)

Adjusting the temperature

The driver and front passenger can each choose their own temperature setting.
The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.
► Press one of the buttons **4** to increase (red) or decrease (blue) the value.
It is recommended that you avoid a difference of more than 3°C in the settings for left and right.

Automatic Comfort programme

This automatic mode ensures optimum management of the passenger compartment temperature, air flow and air distribution, based on the selected comfort level.
► Press button **9** to activate or deactivate the air conditioning system's automatic mode .

The indicator lamp in the button lights up when the air conditioning system is operating automatically.
You can adjust the intensity of the automatic Comfort programme by using the "**OPTIONS**" button to select one of the available settings:
– "**Soft**": provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.
– "**Normal**": offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).
– "**Fast**": provides strong and effective air flow.
To change the current setting (shown by the corresponding indicator lamp), press button **11** repeatedly until the desired setting is displayed.
To ensure passenger comfort in the rear seats, favour "**Normal**" and "**Fast**" settings.
This setting is associated with automatic mode only. However, on deactivation of **AUTO** mode, the indicator lamp for the most recently selected setting remains on.
Changing the setting does not reactivate **AUTO** mode if it was deactivated.

i In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment.
On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to more quickly reach the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Automatic Visibility programme

For more information on button **1**, refer to the "**Front Demisting/De-icing**" section.

"Air Quality System" (AQS) function

Using a pollution sensor, this function automatically activates recirculation of the interior air once a certain level of polluting substances in the exterior air is detected.
When the air quality returns to a satisfactory level, recirculation of interior air is automatically deactivated.
This function is not designed to detect unpleasant odours.
Recirculation is automatically activated when the windscreen wash is used or when reverse gear is engaged.
The function does not operate if the exterior temperature is below 5 °C, to avoid the risk of misting of the windscreen and side windows.
To activate or deactivate the function, go to the secondary page by using the "**OPTIONS**" button, then press button **12**.

Manual control

It is possible to manually adjust one or more of these functions, while the system retains automatic control of the other functions:
– air flow.
– air distribution.
The indicator lamp in the "**AUTO**" button goes out if a setting is changed.
► Press button **9** again to reactivate the automatic Comfort programme.

Adjusting the air flow

► Press one of the buttons **6** (- or +) to increase or decrease air flow.
The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in according to the request.
When the air flow is reduced to a minimum, ventilation stops.
"**OFF**" is displayed alongside the fan.

Adjusting the air distribution

► Press the buttons **5** to adjust the air flow distribution inside the passenger compartment.

Windscreen and side windows

Central and side air vents

Footwells

The lighting of the button indicates that air is being blown in the specified direction.

It is possible to activate all three buttons simultaneously, for uniform distribution throughout the passenger compartment.

Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed:
- It lowers the temperature in summer.
- It increases the effectiveness of the demisting, in winter, above 3°C.

► Press button **8** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.
When the system is activated, the indicator lamp in the button comes on.

> i Air conditioning does not operate when the air flow is deactivated.
> To obtain cool air more quickly, enable interior air recirculation for a brief period. Then return to the intake of exterior air.
> Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity or misting).

Mono-zone/Dual-zone

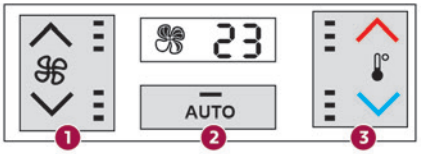
The passenger temperature setting can be linked to the driver's setting (mono-zone function).
► Press button **10** to activate the "**MONO**" function.
The function is automatically deactivated if the passenger uses their temperature adjustment buttons (dual-zone function).

"REAR" function

Activation of the function switches on the blower of the rear air vents.
► Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.
► Press button **14** to activate the "**REAR**" function; its status is displayed as "**ON**".

Remote settings controls

With the "REAR" function activated and the remote settings controls unlocked, the rear passengers can take control of the main air conditioning system settings using the control panel located at the rear of the centre console.
The settings displayed on the touch screen are modified accordingly.



1. Adjusting the air flow
2. Automatic Comfort programme
3. Adjusting the temperature

Locking the remote settings controls

It is possible to prevent the rear passengers from accessing these settings.
► Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.
► Press button **15** to lock the remote settings controls; the "**ON**" status is displayed.
A padlock appears on the rear air conditioning display.

Ventilation with the ignition on

When the ignition is switched on, the ventilation system and the air flow **2** and air distribution **3** settings in the passenger compartment are activated, for a period which depends on the battery charge.
This function does not include the air conditioning system.

Switching the system off

► Press button **2**.
Its indicator lamp comes on and all of the other indicator lamps for the system go off.
This action deactivates all of the functions of the air conditioning system.
The temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.

Interior air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows.
Recirculating the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from outside odours and fumes and allows the desired passenger compartment temperature to be achieved more rapidly.

▶ Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

i This function is activated automatically when the front screenwash is used or reverse gear is engaged.

Front demisting - defrosting

Automatic Visibility programme

This mode allows the windscreen and side windows to be demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.

▶ Press this button to activate/deactivate the mode (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

The programme automatically manages the air conditioning (depending on version), air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

It is possible to manually change the air flow without deactivating the automatic Visibility programme.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

! In wintry conditions, before moving off, remove all snow or ice on the windscreen near the camera.

Otherwise, the operation of the equipment using the camera may be affected.

Rear screen demisting/defrosting

This demisting/de-icing only works with the engine running.

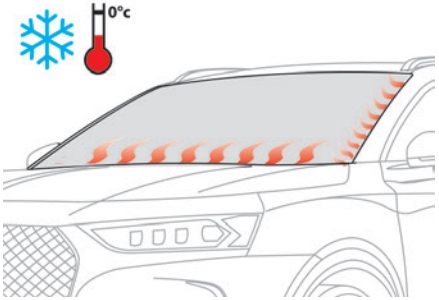
Depending on version, it also demists/de-ices the door mirrors.

▶ Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the indicator lamp coming on/switching off).

Demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of electrical current.

e Switch off demisting/defrosting when you no longer need it; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

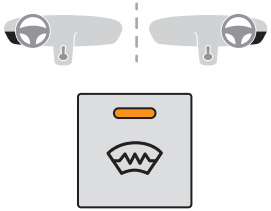
Heated windscreen



In cold weather, this system heats the bottom of the windscreen, as well as the area alongside the left-hand windscreen pillar.

Without changing the settings for the air conditioning system, it allows faster release of the windscreen wiper blades when they are frozen to the windscreen and helps avoid the accumulation of snow resulting from the operation of the windscreen wipers.

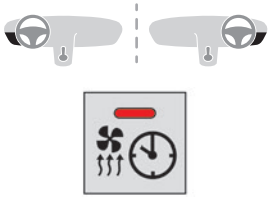
Switching on/off



► With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by an indicator lamp).
The function is activated when the outside temperature drops below 0°C. It is deactivated automatically when the engine is switched off.

Additional heating/ ventilation system

Only available for petrol or Diesel vehicles.



Heating

This is an additional and separate system which heats the passenger compartment and improves defrosting performance.

This indicator lamp is lit while the system is programmed or set in operation remotely via the remote control.
It flashes during the whole duration of the heating and goes off at the end of the heating cycle or when stopped using the remote control.

> i If the engine has not been started for more than 3 days, the remote control starting of the system may not work.

Ventilation

This system allows ventilation of the passenger compartment with exterior air to improve the temperature experienced on entering the vehicle in summer.

Programming

The heating or ventilation systems can be programmed to switch on via the secondary page of the "**Climate**" menu on the touch screen.

With NAVIGATION

In the **Climate** > **OPTIONS** menu:

► Select **Temperature conditioning**.

► Press the **Status** tab to activate/deactivate the system.
► Press the **Settings** tab to select **Heating** mode to heat the engine and passenger compartment or **Ventilation** to ventilate the passenger compartment.
► Then programme/save the activation time for each selection.
► Press **OK** to confirm.

Long-range remote control

This enables you to switch the heating in the passenger compartment on or off from a distance.
The remote control has a range of about 0.6 miles (1 km) in open country.

On

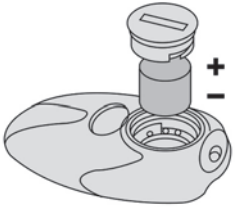
► Pressing and holding this button starts the heating immediately (confirmed by the green indicator lamp coming on briefly).

Switching off

OFF ► Pressing and holding this button stops the heating immediately (confirmed by the temporary illumination of the red indicator lamp).
The indicator lamp in the remote control flashes for about 2 seconds if the vehicle has not received the signal.
Then repeat the command after having changed location.

Changing the battery

The indicator lamp in the remote control will change to orange if the battery charge is low.
If the indicator lamp is not on, the battery is discharged.



► Use a coin to unscrew the cap and replace the battery.

e Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

i If the system is switched on using the long-range remote control, the maximum heating duration is around 45 min. with a Diesel engine, and around 30 min. with a petrol engine.

i The ventilation is activated provided that the battery is sufficiently charged.
The heating is activated provided that:
– the battery charge and the fuel level are sufficient,
– the engine has been started since the previous heating cycle,
– 60 minutes have elapsed between two heating requests.

! Programmable heating is supplied by the vehicle fuel tank. Before use, make sure that you have sufficient fuel. If the fuel tank is on reserve, you are strongly recommended not to programme the heating.

The additional heating must always be switched off while refuelling to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.

! To avoid the risk of poisoning or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.
Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.) - Risk of fire!

! Glazed surfaces such as the rear screen or windscreen can become very hot in places.
Never put objects on these surfaces; never touch these surfaces - Risk of burns!

Temperature pre-conditioning (Rechargeable hybrid)

This function allows you to programme the temperature in the passenger compartment to reach a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx. 21°C) before you enter the vehicle, on the days and at the times of your choice.
This function is available when the vehicle is connected or not connected.

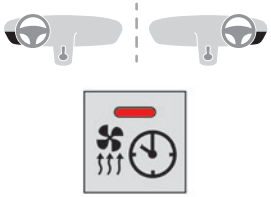
Programming

(With NAVIGATION)
In the **Climate** > **OPTIONS** menu:

Select **Temperature conditioning**.

► Press + to add a programme.

► Select the time of entry into the vehicle and the desired days. Press **OK**.
► Press **ON** to activate this programming.
The pre-conditioning sequence begins approximately 45 minutes before the programmed time when the vehicle is connected (20 minutes when it is not connected) and is maintained for 10 minutes after.



This indicator lamp comes on fixed when a temperature pre-conditioning cycle is programmed. It flashes when temperature pre-conditioning is in progress.

> i You can set multiple programmes. Each one is saved in the system.
> To optimise the driving range, we recommend starting a programme while the vehicle is connected.

Programming can also be carried out from a smartphone using the **MyDS App** application.
With DS CONNECT RADIO, programming can only be carried out from a smartphone using the application.

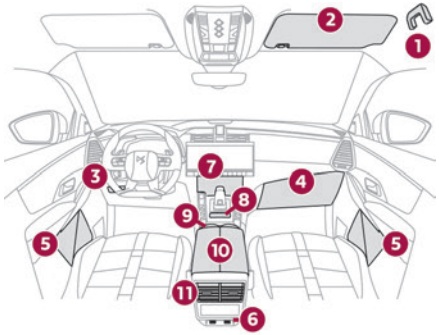
For more information on **Remote functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

> i The fan noise that occurs during temperature pre-conditioning is perfectly normal.

Operating conditions

– The function is only activated when the **ignition is switched off** and the **vehicle locked**.
– When the vehicle is not connected, the function is only activated if the battery charge level is greater than 20%.
– When the vehicle is not connected and a recurring programme is active (e.g. from Monday to Friday), if two temperature pre-conditioning sequences are run without the vehicle being used, the programme will be deactivated.

Front fittings



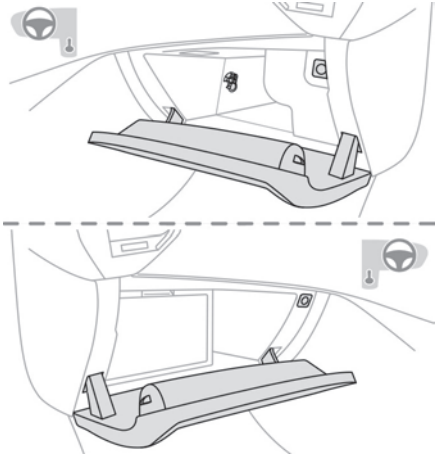
1. Grab handle or Glasses holder (driver's side)
   Grab handle (passenger side)
2. Sun visor
3. Storage compartment below the steering wheel
4. Illuminated glove box
5. Door pockets
6. USB sockets
7. Storage compartment or Wireless smartphone charger
   12 V accessory socket (120 W)
8. Storage compartment
9. Cup holder
10. Front armrest with storage
11. Storage compartment or Rear blower

Sun visor

► With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; depending on the version, the mirror is illuminated automatically.
This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

Glove box

► To open the glove box, lift the handle.
With the ignition on, the glove box is lit when open.
Depending on version, it contains an adjustable ventilation nozzle, distributing the same conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.



It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch.

! Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front. It may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

Cigarette lighter/12 V accessory socket(s)

► To use the cigarette lighter, press it in and wait a few seconds until it pops out automatically.
► To use a 12 V accessory (max. power: 120 W), remove the cigarette lighter and connect a suitable adaptor.
You can use this socket to connect a telephone charger, a bottle warmer, etc.
After use, put the cigarette lighter back into place straight away.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by the Manufacturer, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

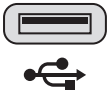
USB sockets

These symbols determine the type of use of a USB socket:

Power supply and recharging.

Likewise, plus exchange of multimedia data with the audio system.

Likewise, plus use of smartphone applications with the touch screen.



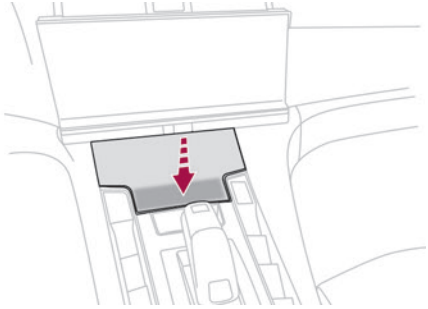
The USB socket allows the connection of a portable device or a USB memory stick.
It reads the audio files that are sent to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.
These files can be managed using the steering-mounted controls or those on the touch screen.

The USB socket also allows a smartphone to be connected by Android Auto® or CarPlay®, enabling certain smartphone applications to be used on the touch screen.

For best results, use a cable made or approved by the device manufacturer.
These applications can be managed using the steering-mounted controls or the audio system controls.

i When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically.
While charging, a message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.
For more information about how to use this equipment, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

Storage compartment



► To open the storage compartment, press the front central part.

Wireless smartphone charger

This system allows wireless charging of a portable device such as a smartphone, using the magnetic induction principle, in accordance with the Qi 1.1 standard.
The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell.
A mat can also be used provided that it is approved by the Manufacturer.
The charging area is identified by the Qi symbol.
The charger works with the engine running and with the Stop & Start system in STOP mode.
Charging is managed by the smartphone.
With the Keyless Entry and Start system, the charger's operation may be briefly disrupted when a door is opened or the ignition is switched off.

Charging

► With the charging area clear, place a device in its centre.

When the portable device is detected, the charger's indicator lamp lights up green. It remains lit for the whole time that the battery is being charged.

! The system is not designed to charge multiple devices simultaneously.

! Do not leave metal objects (e.g. coins, keys, vehicle remote control) in the charging area while a device is being charged - risk of overheating or interrupting the charging!

Checking operation

The state of the indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

State of the indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible devices detected. Charging complete.
Fixed green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.

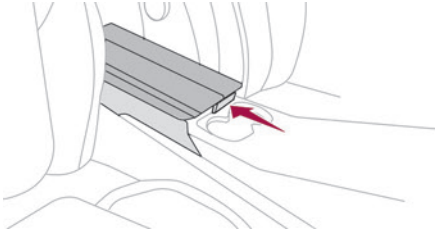
State of the indicator lamp	Meaning
Flashing orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
Fixed orange	Malfunction of the portable device's battery meter. Device battery temperature too high. Charger malfunction.

If the indicator lamp is fixed orange:
– remove the device, then place it back in the centre of the charging zone.
or
– remove the device and try again in a quarter of an hour.
If the problem persists, have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front armrest

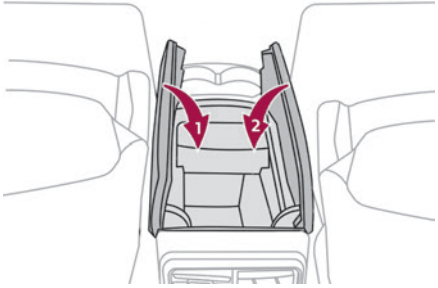
It includes a storage space.

Opening



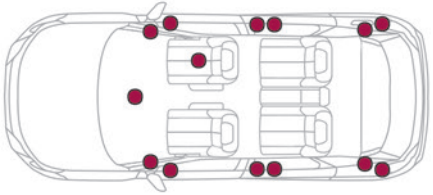
► Press the lever beneath the cover.
The cover opens in two parts.

Closing



► Fold back the two parts of the cover.

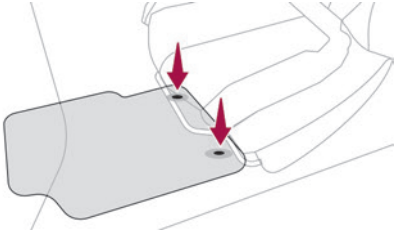
FOCAL ELECTRA® Premium Hi-Fi system



The vehicle is equipped with a high-fidelity acoustic system from the French brand FOCAL®. 14 speakers incorporating exclusive FOCAL® technologies offer the pleasure of pure and detailed sound inside the vehicle:
– Polyglass technology central speaker/mid-range satellite speakers: sound immersion and spatialisation.
– Polyglass technology woofers/mid-ranges with high excursion: balance, dynamics and precision of sound.
– Aluminium TNF inverted dome tweeter: optimal sound dispersion, detailed treble.
– 12 channel active amplification - 515 Watts Hybrid Class AB/Class D technology: breadth and finesse in the high frequency signals, as well as real power in the bass.
– Subwoofer with high excursion Power Flower™ triple coil technology: deep and controlled reproduction of low frequencies.

Mats

Fitting



When fitting it on the driver's side, only use the mountings present on the carpet (a "click" indicates proper locking).
The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

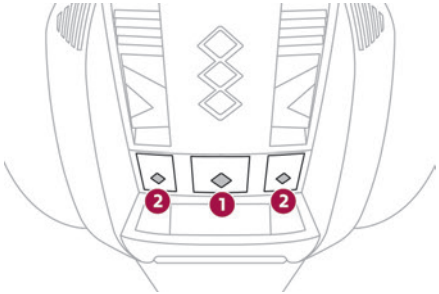
Removing/refitting

► To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat backwards and unclip the fasteners.
► To refit it, position the mat and secure it by pressing down.
► Check that the mat is secured correctly.

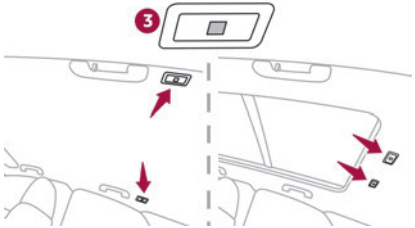
! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
– Only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
– Never fit one mat on top of another.
The use of mats not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

Touch-sensitive courtesy lamps



1. Front touch-sensitive courtesy lamp
2. Front touch-sensitive reading lamps



3. Rear touch-sensitive reading lamps

Front touch-sensitive courtesy lamp

It comes on gradually:
– when the vehicle is unlocked.
– when the ignition is switched off.
– when a door is opened.
– when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate the vehicle.
It switches off:
– when the vehicle is locked.
– when the ignition is switched on.
– 30 seconds after the last door is closed.
The front and rear touch-sensitive reading lamps come on and go off at the same time as the courtesy lamp.
A long press on the courtesy lamp completely deactivates it from coming on (confirmed by the "**OFF**" symbol).

Touch-sensitive reading lamps

► With the ignition on, press the corresponding reading lamp.

Interior ambient lighting

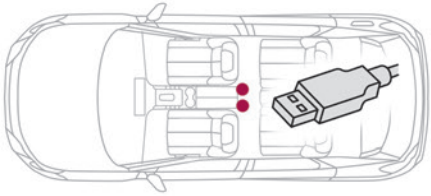
The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility inside the vehicle when the light is poor.

Activation/deactivation and adjustment of the light intensity as well as the choice of colour are set via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

The passenger compartment ambient lighting is also managed by the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function.
For more information on the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE function**, refer to the corresponding section.

Rear fittings

USB sockets



Each USB socket is used only to power or recharge a portable device.

Rear armrest

The armrest incorporates two cup holders.

Ski flap

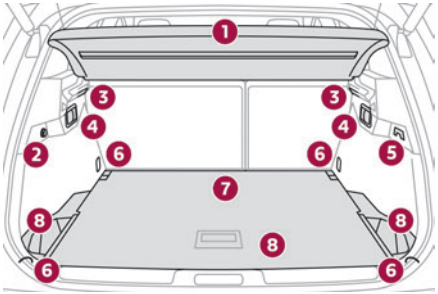
Device for storing and transporting long objects.

Opening

► With the rear armrest lowered, open the flap by pulling its handle downwards.

► Load the objects from inside the boot.

Boot fittings



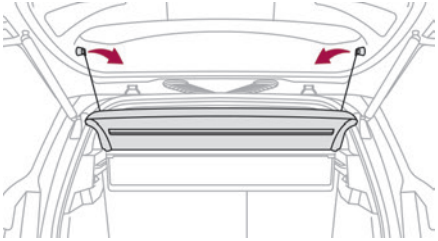
1. Load space cover
2. 12 V accessory socket (120 W)
3. Boot lamp
4. Rear seat folding controls
5. Hooks
6. Stowing rings
7. Adjustable boot floor (2-position)
8. Storage well/Tool box under the floor

i The stowing rings are designed to secure luggage using different types of retaining nets.
These nets are available as an accessory.
For more information, contact a dealer.

Load space cover shelf

It consists of two sections:
– a fixed section with an open storage space.

– a movable section which rises when the boot is opened, with an open storage space.



To remove the load space cover shelf:
► Unhook the two cords.
► Raise the movable section slightly, then unclip it on each side.
► Unclip the fixed section on each side, then take out the load space cover shelf.

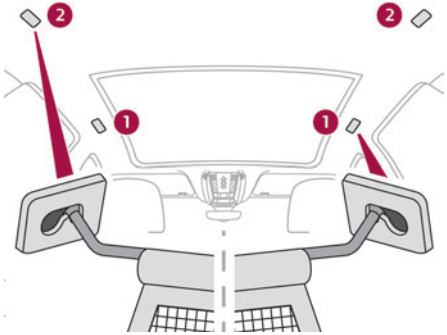
! In the event of sudden deceleration, objects placed on the load space cover shelf can turn into projectiles.

High load retaining net

This removable net allows the entire loading volume up to the roof to be used:
– behind the front seats (1st row) when the rear seats are folded down.
– behind the rear seats (2nd row) when the load space cover is removed.

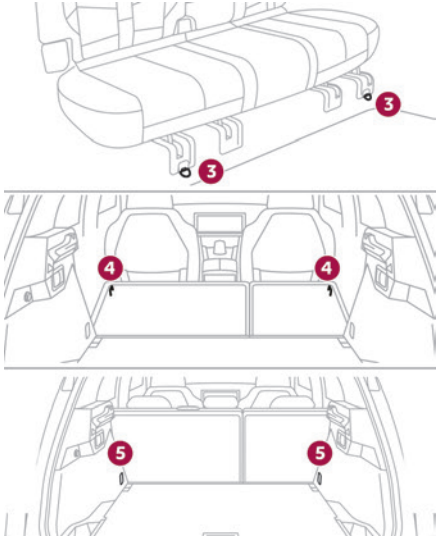
i This removable net protects the occupants in the event of sudden braking.

Upper fixings



1. For installation behind row 1
2. For installation behind row 2

Lower fixings



3. For installation behind row 1 (Petrol or Diesel)
4. For installation behind row 1 (Rechargeable hybrid)
5. For installation behind row 2

12 V accessory socket

► To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 W), lift the cover and plug in a suitable adaptor.
► Switch on the ignition.

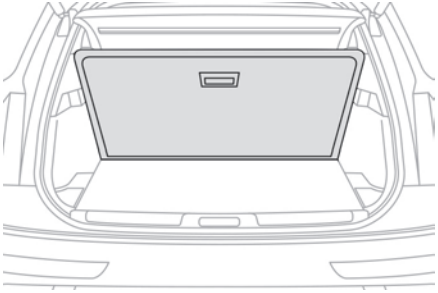
! The connection of an electrical device not approved by the Manufacturer, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

2-position boot floor

(Depending on version)
This 2-position floor allows the boot volume to be optimised using the lateral stops located on the sides:
– High position (**100 kg max**.): to obtain a flat floor up to the front seats, when the rear seats are folded down.
– Low position (**150 kg max**.): maximum boot volume.

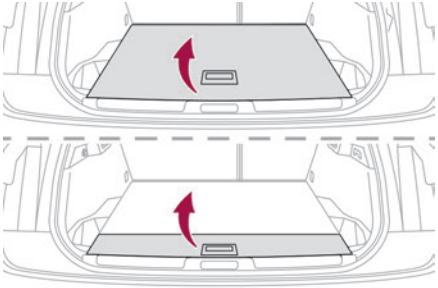
i On certain versions, the adjustable boot floor cannot be fitted in the low position.

To change the height:
► Lift and pull the floor towards you using its central handle, then use the lateral stops to move it.
► Push the floor all the way forwards to place it in the desired position.



To keep it in the inclined position:
► From the high position, lift the floor towards the load space cover.
► Take it past the retractable stops, then rest the floor on these stops.

Storage well



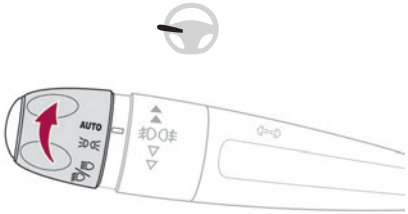
► Lift the boot floor as far as possible or lift the hinged boot carpet (depending on version) to access the storage well.
Depending on version, it includes:
– A temporary puncture repair kit with the tool kit.
– A spare wheel with the tool kit.
– The traction battery charging cables (Rechargeable hybrid).

Boot lamp

It comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.
The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
– When the ignition is off, approximately 10 minutes.
– In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
– With the engine running, unlimited.

Exterior lighting control stalk

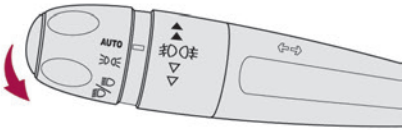
Main lighting



AUTO	Automatic illumination of lamps/daytime running lamps
	Sidelamps only
	Dipped or main beam headlamps

Remote rear lamps
When the vehicle's lamps are on, opening the tailgate automatically switches illumination from the brake lamps, sidelamps and direction indicator lamps to the lamps located in the rear bumper, to maintain the safety of the vehicle.

Headlamp dipping



► Pull the lighting control stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.
In "**AUTO**" and sidelamps mode, pull the lighting control stalk to switch the main beam headlamps on directly ("headlamp flash").

Display

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp on the instrument panel confirms that the selected lighting is on.

A fault with a lamp is signalled by the permanent illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

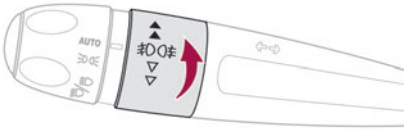
Rear foglamps

They only work if the dipped or main beam headlamps are on.

► Rotate the ring forwards/backwards to turn them on/off.
When the lighting is switched off automatically ("**AUTO**" position) the foglamps and the dipped beam headlamps remain on.

Front foglamps/Rear foglamps

They operate with the sidelamps, dipped or main beam headlamps on.



► Rotate the ring forwards:
- once to switch on the front foglamps,
- a second time to switch on the rear foglamps.

► Turn in the opposite direction to switch off.
If the lighting is switched off automatically ("**AUTO**" position) or the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.
► Rotate the ring backwards to switch the foglamps off; the sidelamps will then switch off.

Switching on the foglamps is prohibited in clear weather or in rain, both day and

night. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They must only be used in fog or falling snow (rules may vary depending on country).
Do not forget to switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

Switching off of the lighting when the ignition is switched off
When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lamps after switching off the ignition
To reactivate the lighting control, rotate the ring to the "**AUTO**" position, then to the desired position.
If the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lamps are on.
They will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the level of charge in the battery (entering energy economy mode).

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

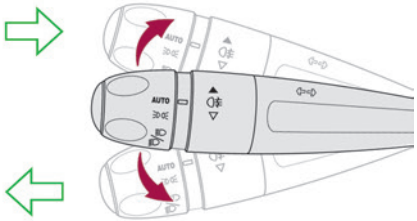
Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!

Travelling abroad
The design of the dipped beam headlamps allows you to drive, without any modification, in a country that drives on the other side of the road to the country in which your vehicle was sold.
However, for versions with Full LED technology headlamps, the Adaptive Frontlight System function should not be activated in order to avoid dazzling drivers of oncoming vehicles.

Daytime running lamps/ Sidelamps

These LED lamps at the front and rear of the vehicle light up automatically when the engine starts.
They perform the following functions:
– Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position "**AUTO**" with adequate ambient light).
– Sidelamps (lighting control stalk at position "**AUTO**" with low ambient light or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

Direction indicators



► Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

If you keep the direction indicators on for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).

Three flashes

► Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.
The lighting of the rear LED direction indicators is scrolling.
The brightness of the daytime running lamps is reduced when the direction indicators are on.

Parking lamps

(Depending on version)
Vehicle side marking by lighting the sidelamps on the traffic side only.
► Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk upwards or downwards, depending on the side of the traffic (e.g. when parking on the right, push the lighting control stalk down to light up on the left).
This is confirmed by an audible signal and the lighting of the corresponding direction indicator lamp on the instrument panel.
► To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Headlamp beam height adjustment

Manual adjustment of halogen and Xenon headlamps

To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of these headlamp beams must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0	**(Initial setting)** Driver only or driver + front passenger
1	5 people
2	5 people + load in the boot
3	Driver only + load in the boot
4 5 6	Not used

Automatic adjustment of the Full LED technology headlamps

This system automatically adjusts the height of the headlamp beams according to the load in the vehicle.
In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The system places the headlamp beams in the lowest position.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not touch the "Full LED" technology headlamps - risk of electrocution!

Automatic illumination of lamps

With the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and if a low level of exterior brightness is detected by the rain/sunshine sensor, the sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They may also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers.
As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of the rain/sunshine sensor, the vehicle's lamps come on and this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or the display of a message.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

i In fog or snow, the rain/sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. For this

reason, the lighting will not come on automatically.

i The inner surface of the windscreen may become misted up and affect the proper operation of the rain/sunshine sensor.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Guide-me-home and welcome lighting

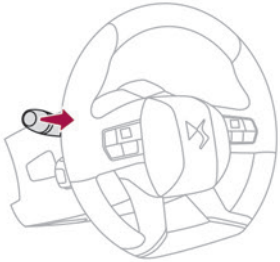
Guide-me-home lighting

Automatic

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the guide-me-home lighting duration in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Manual



► With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlamp flash") to activate/deactivate the function.
Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

Automatic exterior welcome lighting

With the "Automatic illumination of lamps" function activated and when the light is poor, the sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and door mirror spotlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.

The activation, deactivation and duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Door mirror spotlamps

These spotlamps facilitate access to the vehicle by lighting the ground near the front doors.

The spotlamps come on automatically:
- when the vehicle is unlocked.
- when a door is opened.
- when a request to locate the vehicle is received from the remote control.

They also come on with the welcome lighting and guide-me-home lighting functions.
They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

Automatic lighting systems - General recommendations

The automatic lighting systems use a detection camera, located at the top of the windscreen.

i **Operating limits**
The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:
- When visibility conditions are poor (e.g. snowfall, heavy rain).
- If the windscreen is dirty, misted-up or masked (e.g. sticker) in front of the camera.
- If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs or safety barrier reflectors.

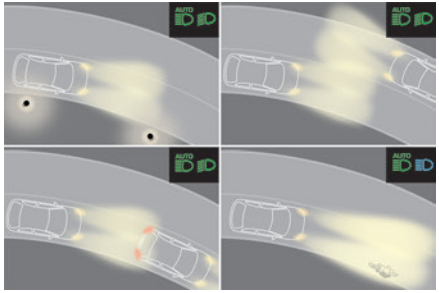
The system is not able to detect:
- Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
- Vehicles with hidden lighting (e.g. travelling behind a safety barrier on the motorway).
- Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

! **Maintenance**
Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the camera.

Automatic headlamp dipping

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations for automatic lighting systems**.

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and the function activated on the touch screen, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlamps, according to lighting and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.



! This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h).
When the speed falls below 9 mph (15 km/h), the function is no longer operational.

Activation/Deactivation

It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.
The state of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.

Operation

If the ambient light level is very low and traffic conditions permit:

– The main beam headlamps come on automatically. These indicator lamps light up on the instrument panel.
If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or the traffic conditions do not allow the main beam headlamps to be lit:

– The dipped beam headlamps remain lit. These indicator lamps light up on the instrument panel.
The function is deactivated if the foglamps are switched on or if the system detects poor visibility conditions (e.g. fog, heavy rain, snowfall).
When the foglamps are switched off or when the visibility conditions become favourable again, the function is automatically reactivated.

This indicator lamp goes out when the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.
► Switch the headlamps manually between dipped and main beam to pause the function.
If the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam.
If the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.
► To reactivate the function, once again switch the headlamps manually between dipped and main beam.

Malfunction

If a malfunction occurs with the system or the camera, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Adaptive Frontlight System

Available only on versions equipped with Full LED technology headlamps.
This function has several lighting modes, specific to each driving situation.
The intensity and direction of the main headlamps and the modules vary so as to increase or reduce the range of the lighting.
The modules rotate and tilt so as to expand and direct the light beam to increase or decrease the lighting up of the sides of the road.

! This function is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver who must continually adapt the driving of the vehicle to the visibility and traffic conditions.

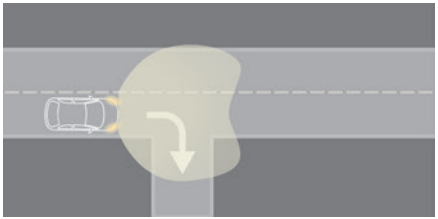
Activation/Deactivation

► Place the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position.

► In the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu, select "**Adaptive lighting**".

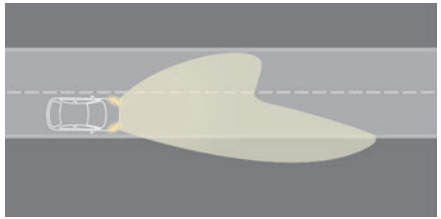
Operation

"City" mode



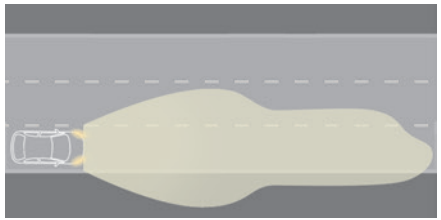
The headlamps provide medium-intensity illumination supplemented by the modules facing outwards.
The width of the beam is increased to allow you to better distinguish hazards on the side of the road (pedestrians, intersections).
The range of this lighting is approximately 230 m.
This mode is activated once the vehicle has been moving for more than 3 seconds at a speed between 0 and 31 mph (50 km/h).

"Road" mode



This lighting provides a higher light beam, an increased intensity of the headlamps and a decreased intensity of the modules.
The range of this lighting is approximately 240 m.
This mode is activated once the vehicle has been moving for more than 2 seconds at a speed between 31 and 68 mph (50 and 110 km/h).

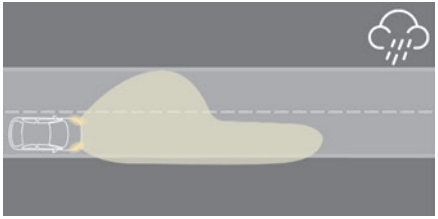
"Motorway" mode



The headlamps and modules create a cone of light with a high beam, suitable for fast roads.
The range of this lighting is approximately 280 m.
This mode is activated if the vehicle has been moving for more than 5 seconds above 68 mph (110 km/h) and is deactivated if the vehicle has

been moving for more than 5 seconds below 56 mph (90 km/h).

"Rain" mode



This mode is activated if the vehicle is moving at a speed between 0 and 43 mph (70 km/h) and 2 minutes after the activation of the wipers.
The beam is widened. The power of the modules is increased to enable the driver to see the road markings more easily, whilst the intensity of the main headlamps is reduced so as to improve the driver's vision (taking reflections caused by a wet road into account).
The range of this lighting is approximately 220 m. Beyond 43 mph (70 km/h), the function switches to "road" or "motorway" mode even if the wipers are activated.

Cornering lighting

This system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the main or dipped beam headlamps are on and the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, junctions, parking manoeuvres).

Without/With cornering lighting

Activation / Deactivation

It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

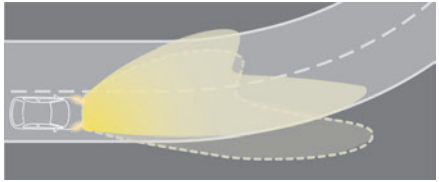
Switching on/off

This system starts:
- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on.

or
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

It becomes inactive:
- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.
- above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Dynamic cornering lighting



Available only on versions equipped with Full LED headlamps.
The headlamps follow the trajectory of the vehicle in bends to provide better lighting of the road.

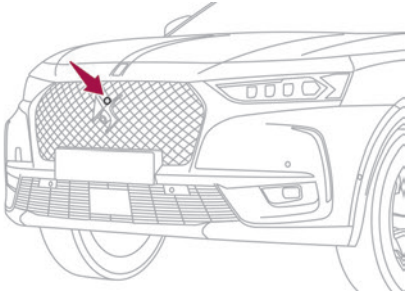
Activation / Deactivation

It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Switching on / off

This system operates from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.
The system does not operate:
- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.
- when reverse gear is engaged.

DS NIGHT VISION



This system identifies and signals the presence of pedestrians and animals in the driver's field of vision, in low exterior light conditions, using an infrared camera located at the front of the vehicle.
Select the "**Night vision**" display mode if you want the infrared camera image to be displayed constantly on the instrument panel. When the conditions are met, an alert is triggered if there is a risk of collision.
The permanent display disappears upon switching off the ignition or if the conditions are not met.

! This system is a driving aid system that cannot, under any circumstances, replace the driver's assessment of night-time visibility and traffic conditions.
In some cases, the differences in temperature are insufficient and the system may not detect all dangers or, conversely, it may give false warnings (e.g. engines of lorries parked by the side of the road).

Conditions for operation

- With the engine running and in Stop mode of Stop & Start.
- Very low light conditions with dipped beam headlamps on and in good working order.
- Temperature between -30°C and +28°C.
- Speed below 99 mph (160 km/h).
- Detection of animals taller than 0.50 m.

Activation/Deactivation

This function is set via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

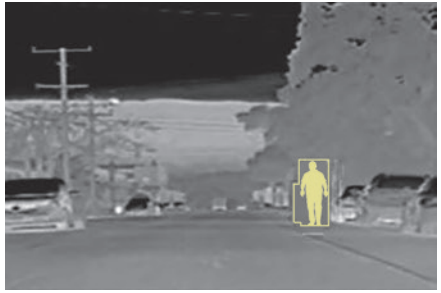
Operation

If the function is selected but the display on the instrument panel and the alerts are not available (in "Night Vision" mode), the indicator lamp comes on in grey.

If all operating conditions are met, the indicator lamp comes on in green: the display in the instrument panel (with "Night Vision" mode selected) and the triggering of alerts are available.

If certain operating conditions (speed or temperature) are not met, the indicator lamp comes on in orange: only the display in the instrument panel is available (in "Night Vision" mode).

Whilst the exterior light is too bright or the dipped beam headlamps have not been switched on, the alerts are not available.



The camera detection range is between 15 m (for pedestrians) and 200 m, depending on visibility conditions.
The image provided by the camera is displayed in shades of grey in the instrument panel; warm objects appear brighter than cold objects.

If pedestrians or animals are detected, they appear in yellow frames.

If the system detects a risk of collision with pedestrians or animals, it triggers an alert: a symbol appears in the middle of the display window. The silhouette of pedestrians or animals is framed in red.
If the "Night Vision" display mode has not been selected, the alert is triggered in the form of a temporary window.
In the event of an alert, the driver may act by making an avoiding manoeuvre or by braking.

Operating limits

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
- Poor visibility conditions (falling snow, heavy rain, thick fog).
- Camera masked by snow, mud or dust.
- Camera scratched after going through roller car washes repeatedly.
- Very high outside temperature.
- At the top or bottom of a steep slope.
- On a very winding road.
- In a bend.
- After an impact which may have impaired the camera settings or damaged it.
- After repainting of the grille outside of the dealer network or a qualified workshop.

Maintenance recommendations

The infrared camera has a wash nozzle connected to the vehicle's front screenwash system.
This nozzle operates every 5th use of the screenwash.
Regularly check that the camera is clean.
In bad weather, or in wintry conditions, ensure that the camera is not covered with mud, ice or snow.

Malfunction

If the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp comes on in orange on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

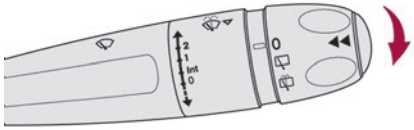
Wiper control stalk

i Before operating the wipers in wintry conditions, clear any snow, ice or frost from the windscreen and around the wiper arms and blades.

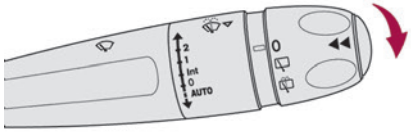
! Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. In extremely hot or cold weather, check that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

i After using an automatic car wash, you may temporarily notice abnormal noises and poorer wiping performance. You do not need to replace the wiper blades.

Without AUTO wiping



With AUTO wiping



Windscreen wipers

► To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2	Fast wiping (heavy rain)
1	Normal wiping (moderate rain)

Int Intermittent wiping (proportional to the vehicle's speed)

0 Switching off

Single wipe (press down and release).

or

AUTO Automatic wiping

Refer to the corresponding section.

i In position **1** or **2**, the wiping frequency is automatically reduced when the speed of the vehicle drops below 3 mph (5 km/h). When the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h) again, the wiping frequency returns to the original frequency (fast or normal).

i After the ignition has been switched off, the wipers may move slightly at the foot of the windscreen.

i If the ignition has been switched off with the windscreen wipers active, you must operate the control stalk again to reactivate wiping when the ignition is switched on again (unless the ignition was off for less than a minute).

Single wipe

► Pull the stalk briefly towards you.

Windscreen wash

► Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.

A final wiping cycle is performed when screenwashing ends.

i The windscreen wash jets are incorporated into the tip of each wiper arm.

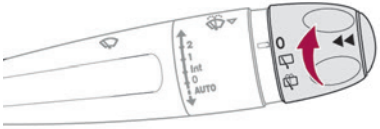
Screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces screenwash fluid consumption.

! To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty.

Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products.

Never top up with water.

Rear wiper



► Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

0 Off

Intermittent wiping

Screenwash-wipe

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the front windscreen wipers are operating.

The settings are changed via the **Driving/ Vehicle** touch screen menu.

! In the event of accumulation of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towing device, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the touch screen's **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

Rear screenwash

► Turn the ring as far as it will go and hold it in position.

The screenwash and the wiper operate for as long as the ring remains turned.

A final wiping cycle is performed when screen washing ends.

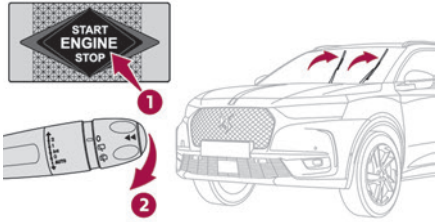
Special position of the windscreen wipers

This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be

useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

> i To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
> – handle them with care.
> – clean them regularly using soapy water.
> – avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen.
> – replace them at the first signs of wear.

Before removing a windscreen wiper blade



Operating the wiper control stalk immediately after switching off the ignition will place the wiper blades in a vertical position.

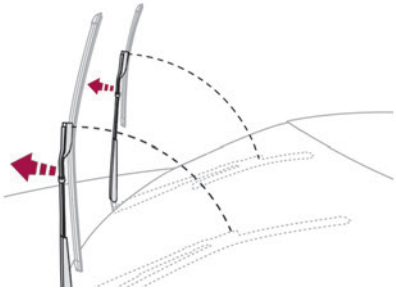
► Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a windscreen wiper blade

► To return the wiper blades to their initial position after the operation, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/Refitting at the front



► Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.

► Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

> ! Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.
> Do not touch the wiper blades - risk of irreparable deformation.
> Do not release them while moving them. Risk of damaging the windscreen!

► Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

> i Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

► Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.

► Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.

► Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.

► Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

► Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

► Clean the rear screen using screenwash fluid.

► Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.

► Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.

► Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the rear screen.

Automatic windscreen wipers

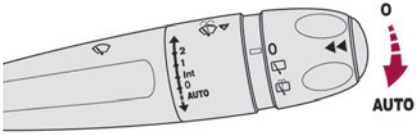
In **AUTO** mode, the windscreen wipers operate automatically and adapt to the intensity of the rainfall.

Detection is via a rain/brightness sensor, located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

> ! Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor.
> When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition.

In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

Switching on



► Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.
A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.
AUTO This indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Switching off

► Give the control stalk another brief push downwards or place the control stalk in another position (**Int**, **1** or **2**).
AUTO This indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

i If the ignition has been off for more than one minute, the automatic wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

General safety recommendations

! Do not remove the labels attached in different places on your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a dealer is able to provide.

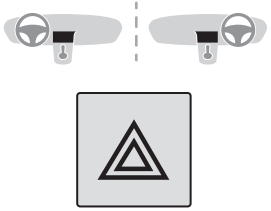
! Depending on country regulations, certain safety equipment may be mandatory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

! **Installing electrical accessories:**
– The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by the Manufacturer may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.
– As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for authorised dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
– Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by the Manufacturer or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

! **Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters**
Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

i **Declarations of conformity for radio equipment**
The relevant certificates are available on the http://service.dsautomobiles.com website.

Hazard warning lamps

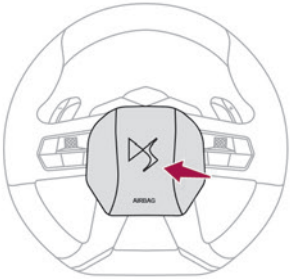


► Pressing this button causes all the direction indicators to flash.
They can work with the ignition switched off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate.
They can be switched off by pressing the button.

Horn



► Press the central part of the steering wheel.

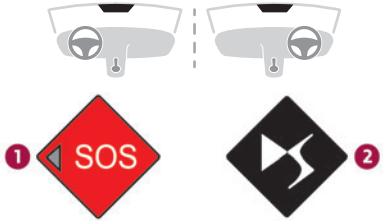
Pedestrian horn (Rechargeable hybrid)

This system alerts pedestrians that the vehicle is approaching, when driving in **Electric** mode (100% electric driving).
The pedestrian horn operates once the vehicle is moving and at speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), in forward or reverse gear.
This function cannot be deactivated.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency or assistance call



1. Localised Emergency Call
2. Localised Assistance Call

Localised Emergency Call (PE112)

► In an emergency, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds.

The lit indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services*.
"Localised Emergency Call" immediately locates your vehicle and puts you in contact with the appropriate emergency services**.
► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.
The indicator lamp flashes while the vehicle data is being sent, and then remains lit when communication is established.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically, irrespective of the deployment of any airbags.

i This service is available free of charge.

Operation of the system

– Upon switching on the ignition, the indicator lamp lights up red, then green, and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.
– The indicator lamp is fixed red: system malfunction.
– The indicator lamp flashes red: replace the back-up battery.

* In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.
** Depending on the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call".
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

In the latter 2 cases, the emergency and assistance call services may not work.
Contact a dealer or a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i A system fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

i **Data processing**
All processing of personal information by the "Localised Emergency Call" system (PE112) complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6.1, paragraph d) of Regulation 2016/679.
Personal information processing is strictly limited to the management of the "Localised Emergency Call" system used with the "112" European single emergency call number.
The "Localised Emergency Call" system is able to collect and process only the following data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, most recent three locations and direction of travel, and a timestamped log file recording the automatic activation of the system.
The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority reception and handling of calls to the "112" emergency number.

i **Data storage**
Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode.
The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations are stored.
When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

i **Access to data**
You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR). Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned Directive, unless doing so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort.
You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.

Localised Assistance Call

► If the vehicle breaks down, press button **2** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message*).
► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

i Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or location) between your vehicle and DS AUTOMOBILES.
It can be configured in the **Settings** menu on the touch screen.
By default, depending on equipment, deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the 2 buttons, then press the "Localised Assistance Call" button to confirm.

* According to the geographic coverage of 'Localised Emergency Call', 'Localised Assistance Call' and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

i If you purchased your vehicle outside the dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

i For technical reasons, in particular to improve the quality of telematic services for customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system at any time.

i If you benefit from the DS CONNECT BOX offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.
For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

The electronic stability control programme includes the following systems:
- Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).
- Trailer stability assist (TSA).

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)/Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.
ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) manages overall braking pressure on each individual wheel.
► **When braking in an emergency, depress the pedal very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

i Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.
The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.
You must stop the vehicle.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

! **After an impact**
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

This system reduces the emergency stopping distance, by optimising the braking pressure.
It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is depressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) / Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Anti-slip regulation (or traction control) optimises traction by using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid one

or more wheels spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability.
If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.
These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.

These systems are activated in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory (confirmed by this warning lamp flashing on the instrument panel).

Deactivation/Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR system, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.
Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.

The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.
Deactivation/reactivation is confirmed by the display of a message.
The ASR system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched on or at speeds over 31 mph (50 km/h).
Reactivation is manual below 31 mph (50 km/h).

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

ASR/DSC
These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed. It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures provided by dealers.
In order to ensure that these systems remain effective in wintry conditions, the use of snow or all-season tyres is recommended. All four wheels must be fitted with tyres approved for your vehicle.
All tyre specifications are listed on the tyre/paint label. For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer snaking.

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.
The electronic stability control system (ESC) must not have any faults.
The vehicle speed must be between 37 and 99 mph (60 and 160 km/h).

If the system detects that the trailer is snaking, it applies the brakes to stabilise the trailer and reduces engine power, if necessary, to slow the vehicle (indicated by the flashing of this warning lamp on the instrument panel and the brake lamps coming on).
For information on weights and towed loads, refer to the **Engine technical data and towed loads** section or your vehicle's registration certificate.
To ensure safe driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
To continue towing a trailer, reduce speed and drive carefully!
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The trailer stability control system provides an extra safety feature under normal driving conditions, when following the recommendations for use of trailers and current legislation in force in your country. It must not encourage the driver to take extra risks, such as using a trailer in unsuitable conditions of operation (e.g. excessive load, exceeded nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system) or driving at excessive speed.
In certain cases, the system may not detect trailer snaking, particularly with a light trailer. When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden trailer snaking.

Intelligent traction control ("Snow motion")

(Depending on version)
The intelligent traction control system helps improve grip when driving on snow.
This system detects situations of poor surface grip that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.
In these situations, the system limits the amount of wheel spin to provide the best traction and trajectory control for the vehicle.

i The use of winter tyres is strongly recommended on slippery surfaces.

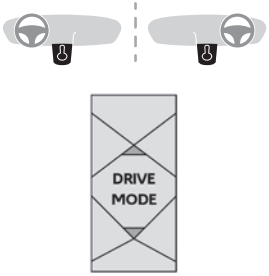
Advanced Traction Control

This special patented traction control system improves grip on snow, mud and sand.

i For optimum grip on snow, it is recommended that you fit the vehicle with winter tyres.
For optimum system performance, contact a dealer to choose the most suitable tyres.

Depending on version, the vehicle is fitted with 4 seasons tyres, marked winter 3 Peak Mountain Snow Flake.
When combined with these tyres, the system offers a good compromise between safety, grip and driveability.

Activation/Deactivation



► Press the **DRIVE MODE** button; the various modes are displayed on the instrument panel.

► Select "**Snow**", "**Mud**" or "**Sand**" depending on the context.
The chosen mode continues to be displayed in the instrument panel.
► To deactivate, select "**Normal**" mode or any other driving mode.
The system is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Operating modes

Snow

This mode constantly adapts the level of wheel spin to offer maximum traction according to the snow conditions (a lot of wheel spin in thick snow; very little on ice). The wheel spin is also adapted to the conditions encountered when driving uphill by optimising the acceleration of the vehicle.
(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

Mud

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much traction torque as possible.
When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.
(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.
(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

! Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

i **Recommendations**
The vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads, but it may occassionally drive on other less passable terrain.
However, it does not permit off-road driving:
- Driving on terrain that can damage the underbody or tear off elements (e.g. fuel pipe, fuel cooler) by obstacles or stones in particular.
- Driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip.
- Crossing a waterway.

Seat belts

Inertia reel
The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to adjust automatically to the shape of the user. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used.

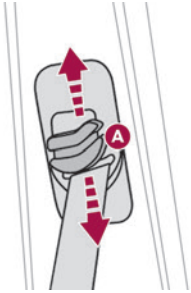
The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.
Pyrotechnic pretensioning
This system improves safety in the event of a frontal or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.
Force limiting system
This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

! **In the event of an impact**
Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front seat belts

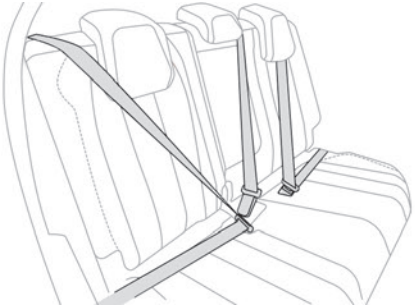
The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and a force limiting system.

Height adjustment



► To adjust the height of the anchorage point, squeeze control **A** and slide it to the notch desired.

Rear seat belts



Each of the rear seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.
The outer seats are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.
For the centre seat, the buckle is held horizontally by an elastic strap if the centre seat belt is not being used.

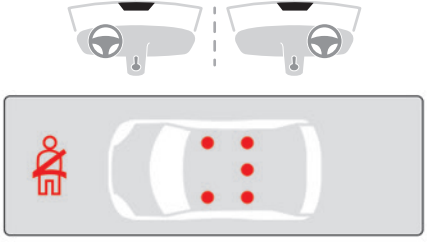
Fastening

► Pull the strap, then insert the tongue into the buckle.
► Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling on the strap.

Unfastening

► Press the red button on the buckle.
► Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Seat belt not fastened/ unfastened alerts



Not fastened/unfastened warning lamp
It comes on in red on both the instrument panel and the front passenger airbag and seat belts warning lamps display, once the system detects that a seat belt is not fastened or has been unfastened.

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened identification indicator lamp
The red indicator lamps on the display indicate the location of the seat belts which are not fastened or have been unfastened.

Not fastened at the front

When the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp and the corresponding indicator lamps light up if the driver and/or the front passenger have not fastened their seat belts.
At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), these warning lamps flash, accompanied by an increasing audible signal for approximately two minutes. After two minutes, these warning lamps remain on as long as the front seatbelts are not fastened.

Not fastened at the rear

When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or the vehicle moving at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp and the corresponding indicator lamps light up for around thirty seconds, if one or more rear seat belts are not fastened.

Unfastened

After the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp and the corresponding indicator lamps light up if the driver and/or one or more passengers unfasten their seat belts.
At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), these warning lamps flash, accompanied by an audible signal for approximately two minutes. After this time, these warning lamps remain on as long as the seatbelts are not refastened.

Advice

! The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever seated in the vehicle, you must always fasten the seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not invert the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role properly.
To ensure the proper functioning of the belt buckles, make sure that there are no foreign bodies present (e.g. a coin) before fastening.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

! **Installation**
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible over the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
At the front, adjusting the position of the seat belt may require the seat height to be adjusted.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
- be tightened as close to the body as possible.
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it is not twisted.
- must only be used to secure one person.
- not show signs of tearing or fraying.
- not be changed or modified, in order to avoid affecting its performance.

Recommendations for children
Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than 1.5 metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.
Never carry a child on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

Maintenance
In accordance with current safety regulations, for all work on your vehicle's seat belts, contact a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a dealer is able to provide.
Have your seat belts checked regularly by a dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by dealers.

Airbags

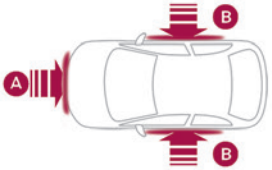
General information

This system is designed to improve the safety of the occupants of the front seats and the rear outer seats in the event of a violent collision. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts equipped with a force limiting system.
Electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:
- In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants.
- In the event of a slight impact, a rear impact and under certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not deploy; only the seat belt helps to protect you in these situations.

The seriousness of the impact depends on the nature of the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the moment of collision.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

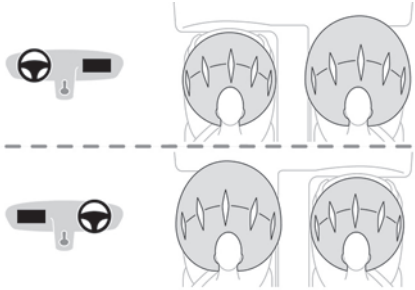
Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone
B. Side impact zone

When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke.
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, limiting the risk of head and chest injury.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

> i The front airbags are adaptive. In particular, they inflate less firmly in the presence of a smaller occupant, with the seat set in a forward longitudinal position.

Deployment

They deploy, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated*, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Lateral airbags

This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, limiting the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, on the door side.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.
The lateral airbag inflates between the chest of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door panel.

Curtain airbags

This system helps provide greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

It deploys simultaneously with the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the corresponding windows.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.
The airbags may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

> ! In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
> In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

* For more information on Deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.

Advice

! **For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.**
Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.
Fasten your seat belt and position it correctly.
Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do not fix or attach anything near or in the path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed.
Never modify the original definition of the vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time, discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.
All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! **Front airbags**
Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

! **Lateral airbags**
Use only approved seat covers compatible with the deployment of these airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (e.g. clothing) as this could cause injuries to the chest or arm when the airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!
All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! **Curtain airbags**
Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.
Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, as these help to secure the curtain airbags.

Child seats

i The legislation on carrying children is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:
– In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
– **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
– **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

i **It is recommended** that children travel on the **rear seats** of the vehicle:
– "**rearward facing**" up to the age of 3,
– "**forward facing**" over the age of 3.

! Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

! An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the vehicle seat. If the passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.
Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

! **Installing a booster seat**
The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
Use a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

! **Additional protections**
To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the sun's rays, fit side blinds on the rear windows.
As a safety measure, do not leave:
– A child alone and unsupervised inside a vehicle.
– A child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed.
– The keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child seat at the rear

Forward-facing or rearward-facing

► Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward-facing or rearward-facing child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
► Check that the backrest of the forward-facing child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and ideally in contact with it.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

Child seat at the front

► Adjust the front passenger seat to the **highest** and **fully back longitudinal position**, **with the backrest straightened**.

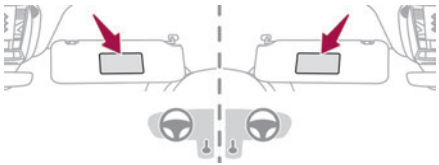
"Forward facing"

! You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

"Rearward facing"

! The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward facing child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.

Warning label - Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, as reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

> NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

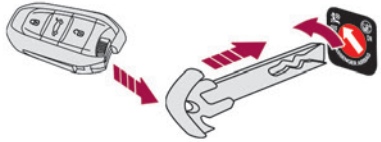
Passenger airbag OFF

! To ensure the safety of the child, the front passenger airbag MUST be deactivated when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed in the event of deployment of the airbag.

! **Vehicles not equipped with a deactivation/reactivation control**
Installing a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat is strictly prohibited - risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment!

Deactivating/Reactivating the front passenger airbag

For vehicles on which it is fitted, the switch is located inside the glove box.



With the ignition off:

► To deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the "**OFF**" position.

► To reactivate it, turn the key to the "**ON**" position.

When the ignition is switched on:

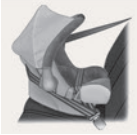
This warning lamp comes on and remains lit to signal deactivation.

Or

This warning lamp comes on for about 1 minute to signal activation.

Recommended child seats

Range of child seats secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg


Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg
L1 "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the "rearward facing" position.

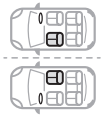
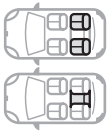
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg
L5 "RÖMER KIDFIX XP" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt. Only suitable for installation on the side rear seats. The head restraint on the vehicle seat must be removed.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg
L6 "GRACO Booster" The child is restrained by the seat belt. Only suitable for installation on the front passenger seat or on the rear side seats.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** in relation to the weight of the child and the seat position in the vehicle.

Seat			Front passenger airbag	Weight of the child/indicative age			
				Under 13 kg (groups 0 **(b)** and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 **(c)**	Passenger seat with height adjustment **(d)** or without height adjustment **(e)**		Deactivated "OFF"	U	U	U	U
			Activated "ON"	X	UF	UF	UF
Row 2 **(f)**	Side rear seats Centre rear seat **(c) (g)**			U	U	U	U

U: seat position suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "rearward facing" and / or "forward facing" use.

UF: seat position suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "forward facing" use.

X: seat position not suitable for installing a child seat of the weight group indicated.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

(c) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child on this seat.

(d) The front height-adjustable seat must be adjusted to the highest and fully back longitudinal position.

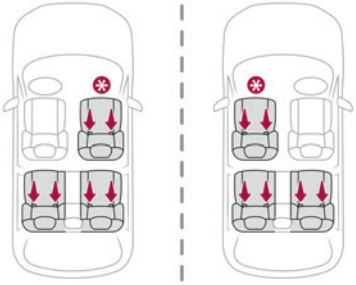
(e) The backrest must be straightened.

(f) To install a "rearward facing" or "forward facing" child seat at the rear, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.

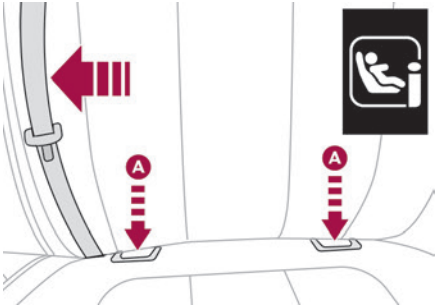
(g) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the centre rear seat.

"ISOFIX" mountings

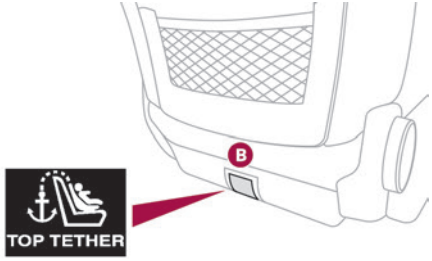
The seats shown below are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:



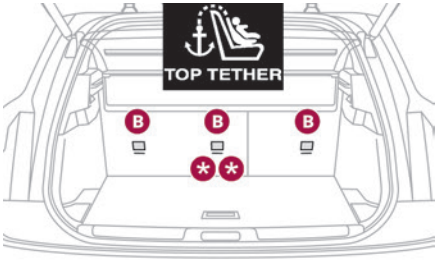
* The electrically-adjusted front passenger seat does not have ISOFIX mountings.
The mountings comprise three rings for each seat, indicated by a marking:
– Two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion.



The 2 latches on **ISOFIX child seats** are secured to them.
– One ring **B**, located behind the seat, called the **TOP TETHER**, for attaching seats fitted with an upper strap.



Front seat



** Depending on country of sale.

Rear seats

This system prevents the child seat from tipping forwards in the event of a front impact.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in the vehicle.
To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:
► Remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed).
► Pass the strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, centring it between the openings for the head restraint rods.
► Secure the upper strap hook to ring **B**.
► Tighten the upper strap.

i When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

! An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

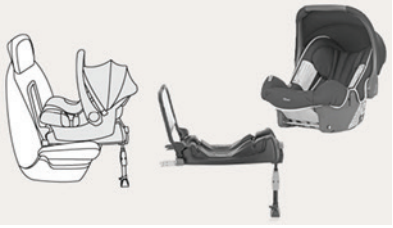
i For information about the options for fitting ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

i Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe and its ISOFIX base"
(size category: **E**)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**.
Only suitable for installation on the front passenger seat or the outer rear seats.
The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor.
This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX"
(size category: **B1**)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg

Suitable for forward-facing installation only.
Attached to rings **A** and ring **B**, referred to as TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.
Only suitable for installation on the front passenger seat or the outer rear seats. The head restraint on the vehicle seat must be removed.
Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down.
This child seat can also be used in seat positions not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the i-Size logo.

			Weight of the child/indicative age									
			Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg Under 13 kg (group 0) (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat			**Carrycot**		**"Rearward facing"**			**"Rearward facing"**		**"Forward facing"**		
ISOFIX size category			**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Seat		**Front passenger airbag**										
Row 1 **(a)**	Passenger seat with manual adjustments **(b)**	Deactivated "OFF"	X		IL			IL		IUF/IL		
		Activated "ON"	X		X			X		IUF/IL		
	Passenger seat with electric adjustments	Deactivated "OFF"	Not ISOFIX									
		Activated "ON"										

			Weight of the child/indicative age									
			Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg Under 13 kg (group 0) (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat			**Carrycot**		**"Rearward facing"**			**"Rearward facing"**		**"Forward facing"**		
ISOFIX size category			**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Seat		**Front passenger airbag**										
Row 2	Rear seat behind the driver's seat		X		IL			IL		IUF/IL		
	Rear seat behind the passenger seat		X		IL			IL		IUF/IL		
	Rear centre seat		Not ISOFIX									

IUF: seat suitable for installing an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing", secured using the upper strap.

IL : seat suitable for installing an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat which can be:
- "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For securing the upper strap using the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

X : seat not suitable for installing an ISOFIX seat or carrycot of the weight group indicated.

(a) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child at this seat position.

(b) Tilt the seat backrest to 45°, then install the child seat.
Straighten the backrest until it contacts the child seat's backrest.

i-Size child seats

i-Size child seats have two latches that are anchored to the two rings **A**.
These i-Size child seats also have:
- either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**.
- or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position.

Their role is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.
For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.
In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing i-Size child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings approved for i-Size.

Seat		Front passenger airbag	i-Size restraint system
Row 1 **(a)**	Manually-adjustable passenger seat **(b)**	Deactivated "OFF"	i-U
		Activated "ON"	i-UF
	Electrically-adjustable passenger seat	Deactivated "OFF"	Not i-Size
		Activated "ON"	Not i-Size
Row 2	Rear outer seats		i-U
	Rear central seat		Not i-Size

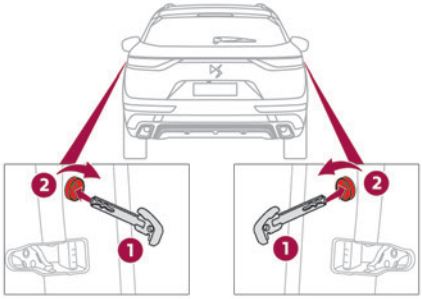
i-U: suitable for forward facing and rearward facing "Universal" i-Size restraint systems.
i-UF: only suitable for forward facing "Universal" i-Size restraint systems.
X: seat position not suitable for "Universal" i-Size restraint systems.

(a) Refer to the current legislation in your country before placing a child in this seat position.
(b) Tilt the seat backrest to 45°, then install the child seat.
Straighten the backrest until it makes contact with the child seat's backrest.

Manual child lock

The system prevents a rear door from being opened using its interior handle.
The red control is located on the edge of each rear door (marked by a label).

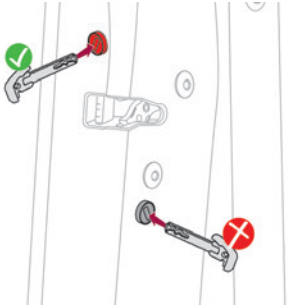
Locking/Unlocking



► To lock, turn the **red** control as far as it will go using the integral key:
- To the right on the left-hand rear door.
- To the left on the right-hand rear door.

► To unlock, turn it in the opposite direction.

! Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.



Electric child lock

(Depending on version)
This control prevents the opening of the rear doors using their interior handles and the use of the rear electric windows.

Activation/Deactivation

► With the ignition on, press this button to activate/deactivate the child lock.
When the indicator lamp is on, the child lock is activated.

i With the child lock activated, it is still possible to open the doors from outside and to operate the rear electric windows from the driver's controls.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.
Always keep the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

Driving recommendations

► Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
► Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
► Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
► Stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention (e.g. settings).
► During long trips, take a break every 2 hours.

Important!

! **Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation.** Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

! In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

! **Never drive with the parking brake applied**. Risk of overheating and damaging the braking system!

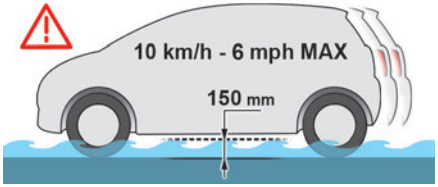
! **Do not park the vehicle or leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves).**The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

! **Never leave the vehicle unattended, with the engine running**. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on the type of gearbox).

! **Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised**.

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the internal combustion engine or electric motor, the gearbox and the electrical systems of the vehicle.



If the vehicle absolutely must drive through a flooded section of road:

► Check that the depth of the water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users.
► Deactivate the Stop & Start function.
► For rechargeable hybrid engines, place the mode selector in **4WD** position (depending on version).
► Drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h).
► Do not stop and do not switch off the motor.
On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Towing

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and particular care must be taken.

i Do not exceed the maximum towable weights.
At altitude: reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the lower air density at high altitudes decreases engine performance.

! **New vehicle:** do not tow a trailer until the vehicle has driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

i If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Nose weight

► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Tyres

► Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

► Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

i If a genuine towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal.

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill causes the coolant temperature to increase. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The fan's cooling capacity does not increase with engine speed.

► Reduce speed and lower the engine speed to limit the amount of heating produced.
► Pay constant attention to the coolant temperature.

If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Using the engine brake is recommended to limit the overheating of the brakes. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.

Side wind

Bear in mind that the vehicle will be more susceptible to wind when towing.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

The keys contain a code, which must be recognised by the vehicle before starting is possible.
If the system malfunctions, indicated by the display of a message, the engine will not start. Contact a dealer.

Starting/switching off the engine

i The electronic key must be present in the passenger compartment.
If the electronic key is not detected, a message is displayed.
Move the electronic key so that the engine can be started or switched off.
If there is still a problem, refer to the "Key not detected - Back-up starting or Back-up switch-off" section.

i Illuminated animations of the "**START/STOP**" button indicate the presence or absence of the electronic key in the passenger compartment.

Starting

► With an **automatic gearbox**, select mode **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal.

► Press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

Diesel engines

In negative temperatures and/or when the engine is cold, starting takes place only after the preheating warning lamp goes out.

If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button:

► Keep the pedal fully depressed and do not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.

In all circumstances, if one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed.

In some circumstances, a message indicates that it is necessary to turn the steering wheel while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering column.

> **Petrol engines**
> With Petrol engines, after a cold start, pre-heating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

Starting rechargeable hybrid vehicles

► Fully depress the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button for approximately 2 seconds.

READY ► Keep your foot on the pedal until this indicator lamp comes on, indicating the activation of the rechargeable hybrid system (confirmed by an audible signal).

> ! To exit Park mode, wait for the READY indicator lamp to come on.

By default, the system starts in **Electric** mode. Depending on certain parameters (battery charge level or outside temperature), the system determines whether it is necessary to start the petrol engine.

It is possible to change the driving mode at any time using the mode selector.

> ! When the vehicle starts in electric mode, it makes no noise.
> Pay particular attention to pedestrians and cyclists who may not hear the vehicle coming despite the pedestrian horn.

Switching off

► Immobilise the vehicle using the parking brake.

► With an **automatic gearbox**, ideally select mode **P** or **N**.

► Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

► For rechargeable hybrid vehicles, before leaving the vehicle, check that the **READY** indicator lamp is switched off.

In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel to lock the steering column.

On certain versions with an automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock, but the gearbox locks in mode **P**.

> i If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

> ! With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

> ! Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

Switching on the ignition without starting the engine

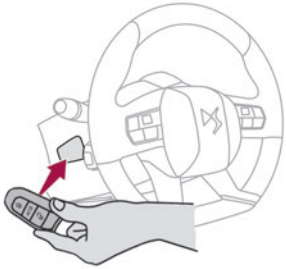
With the electronic key in the passenger compartment, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **without depressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on without starting the engine.

► Press this button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

Key not detected

Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column, to enable the engine to be started if the system fails to detect the key in the recognition zone, or if the battery in the electronic key is flat.



► Place and hold the remote control against the back-up reader.
► **With an automatic gearbox**, select mode **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
► Press the "**START/STOP**" button.
The engine starts.

Back-up switch-off

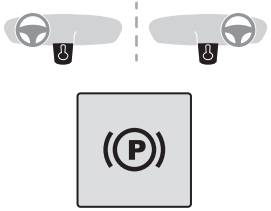
If the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.
► To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "**START/STOP**" button for approximately 5 seconds.
In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency switch-off

In case of emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).
► Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about 5 seconds.
In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.
On certain versions with automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock.

Electric parking brake

In automatic mode, this system applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off and releases it when the vehicle moves off.

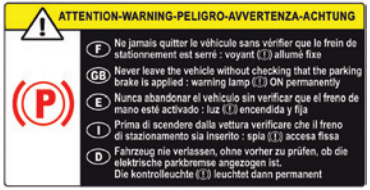


At any time, with the engine running:
► To apply the parking brake, briefly pull the control.
► To release it, briefly push the control while pressing the brake pedal.
Automatic mode is activated by default.
This automatic operation can be deactivated in certain situations.

Indicator lamp

This indicator lamp comes on both on the instrument panel and on the control to confirm that the parking brake has been applied, accompanied by display of the message "**Parking brake applied**".
The indicator lamp goes out to confirm the release of the parking brake, accompanied by the display of the message "**Parking brake released**".
The indicator lamp flashes in response to a manual request to apply or release the brake.

! In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake will not operate.
As a safety measure, with an automatic gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the supplied chocks against one of the wheels.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



! Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking brake indicator lamps on the instrument panel and the control must be on fixed.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

! Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle, as they could release the parking brake.

! **When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing**
With an automatic gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P**.
When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

Manual operation

Manual release

With the ignition on or engine running:
► Press the brake pedal.
► While maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control.

i If the brake pedal is not depressed, the parking brake is not released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:
► Briefly pull the control.
The control indicator lamp flashes to confirm the application request.

Automatic operation

Automatic release

First ensure that the engine is running and that the driver's door is closed.
The electric parking brake gradually releases automatically as the vehicle moves off.
With an automatic gearbox
► Depress the brake pedal.
► Select mode **D**, **M** or **R**.
► Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

i If the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are fully closed.

! When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily. Risk of parking brake release.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake is applied automatically when the engine is switched off.

! It is not applied automatically if the engine stalls or enters STOP mode with Stop & Start.

i In automatic mode, the parking brake can be manually applied or released at any time using the control.

Special cases

Immobilising the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control.

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

! In very cold conditions (ice), applying the parking brake is not recommended.
To immobilise the vehicle, engage a gear or place the chocks against one of the wheels.

i With an automatic gearbox, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

i With an automatic gearbox, if you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode **P** will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

► Start the engine.
► Use the control to apply the parking brake, if it is released.
► Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
► Keep the control pushed in the release direction for 10 to a maximum of 15 seconds.
► Release the control.
► Depress and hold the brake pedal.
► Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.
► Release the control and the brake pedal.

This indicator lamp on the instrument panel comes on to confirm deactivation of the automatic functions.
From this point onwards, only the manual functions, using the control, allow the parking brake to be applied and released.
► Follow this procedure again to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator lamp on the instrument panel going out).

Emergency braking

If depressing the brake pedal fails to provide effective braking or in exceptional circumstances (e.g. driver unwell, assisted driving), the vehicle can be braked by sustained pulling on the electric parking brake control. Braking continues for as long as the control is kept pulled, and ceases when the control is released.
The ABS and DSC systems stabilise the vehicle during emergency braking.
If emergency braking malfunctions, the message "**Parking brake fault**" will be displayed on the instrument panel.

If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, indicated by lighting one or both warning lamps on the instrument panel, the vehicle's stability is no longer ensured.
► In this case, ensure the vehicle's stability by successive and repeated "pull-release" actions on the electric parking brake control until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

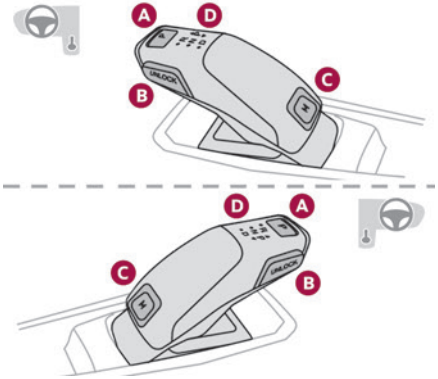
Automatic gearbox

Automatic 6 or 8-speed gearbox with a push selector. It also offers a manual mode with gear changes via control paddles located behind the steering wheel.

Gearbox selector positions

P. Park
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.
R. Reverse gear
N. Neutral
For moving the vehicle with the ignition off, or to allow it to free-wheel.
For more information on **Changing to free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.
D. Driving in automatic mode
The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load.
M. Driving in manual mode
The driver changes gear using the steering-mounted controls.

Push selector

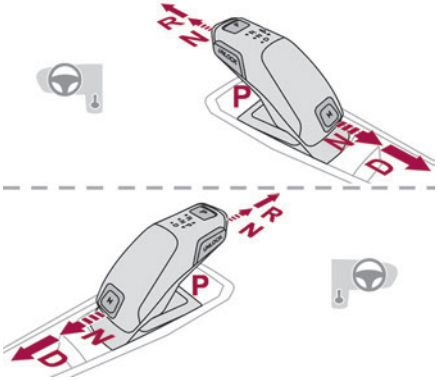


A. Button **P**
To put the gearbox into Park mode.

B. **Unlock** button
To unlock the gearbox and come out of **P** or to change to **R**, with the foot on the brake pedal. Press and hold this button before pushing the selector.

C. Button **M**
To change from mode **D** to permanent manual mode.
(Depending on version: with DS PARK PILOT, the manual mode is accessed via the **DRIVE MODE** control)

D. Gearbox state indicator lamps **(R, N, D)**



► Move the selector by pressing it forwards (**N** or **R**) or rearwards (**N** or **D**) once or twice, passing the point of resistance if necessary.
The push selector returns to its initial position when released.
For example, to change from **P** to **R**, while pressing **Unlock**, push forward twice without crossing the point of resistance or push once crossing the point of resistance:
– In the first case, the gearbox goes from **P** to **N**, then from **N** to **R**.
– In the second case, the gearbox goes directly from **P** to **R**.

Steering-mounted controls

In mode **M** or **D**, the steering-mounted control paddles can be used to change gear manually. They cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.

► Pull the "+" or "-" paddle towards you and release to shift up or down a gear, respectively.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox status is displayed on the instrument panel:
P : Park.
R : Reverse.
N : Neutral.
D1...D6/D8 : Automatic mode.
M1...M6/M8 : Manual mode (temporary or permanent).
- : Instruction not processed in manual mode.
If the driver's door is opened with the ignition on, a message is displayed, prompting you to set the gearbox to mode **P**.

Operation

With the engine running, if it is necessary to press the brake pedal and/or the **Unlock** button in order to change mode, an alert message is displayed in the instrument panel.
Only appropriate attempted changes of mode are accepted.

! With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.

! Never press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time - risk of damage to the gearbox!
In the event of a battery failure, you must place the chocks supplied with the vehicle tools against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

Unlocking the gearbox

- From mode **P**:
  - ► Fully depress the brake pedal.
  - ► Press the **Unlock** button.
  - ► While continuing to press the brake pedal and the **Unlock** button, select another mode.
- From neutral **N**, at a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h):
  - ► Fully depress the brake pedal.
  - ► While continuing to depress the brake pedal, select another mode.

Engaging reverse gear

► Slow down until you come to a stop.
► Depress the brake pedal, then press the **Unlock** button.
► While maintaining the presses, select mode **R**.

Permanent manual mode

Entering the mode:
With EAT8 without DS PARK PILOT button and EAT6:
► With mode **D** initially selected.
► Press button **M**; the green indicator lamp in the button comes on.
With EAT8 and DS PARK PILOT button:
► Press the **DRIVE MODE** control.
► Select "Manual" mode, which is displayed on the instrument panel.
Exiting the mode:
► Push forwards once to return to **D**.
or
► Press button **M**; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.
or
► Select another mode using the **DRIVE MODE** control.

Switching off the ignition

To switch off the ignition, the vehicle must be stationary.

Changing to free-wheeling

For more information on **Changing to free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

i If you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound. It will stop when you close the driver's door again.

Special aspects of automatic mode

The gearbox selects the gear that provides optimal performance based on ambient temperature, road profile, vehicle loading and driving style.
For maximum acceleration, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the selected gear until the maximum engine speed is reached.
Steering mounted controls allow the driver to temporarily select a gear, if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

Special aspects of manual mode

The gearbox only changes from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

Starting the vehicle

From mode **P**:
► Fully depress the brake pedal.
► Start the engine.
► Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, press the **Unlock** button.
► Push once or twice rearwards to select the automatic mode **D**, or forwards to engage reverse **R**.

From neutral **N**:
► Fully depress the brake pedal.
► Start the engine.
► Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, push rearwards to select the automatic mode **D**, or forwards, while pressing the **Unlock** button to engage reverse **R**.
Then, from **D** or **R**:
► Release the brake pedal.
► Accelerate gradually to automatically release the electric parking brake.
The vehicle moves off immediately.

! **Automatic gearbox**
Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Switching the vehicle off

Regardless of the current gearbox mode, mode **P** is immediately engaged automatically when the ignition is switched off.
However, in mode **N**, mode **P** will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (time to enable free-wheeling mode).
Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake was applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.
The corresponding indicator lamps on the gear selector and the electric parking brake control must be on, as well as the indicator lamps on the instrument panel.

Gearbox malfunction

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.
Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.

Switching of the gearbox to back-up mode

Mode **D** locks in third gear.
The paddles on the steering wheel do not work and mode **M** is no longer accessible.
You may feel a significant jolt on engaging reverse gear. This will not damage the gearbox.

Selector malfunction

Minor malfunction

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Drive carefully.
Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.
In some cases, the selector indicator lamps may no longer come on, but the gearbox state is still displayed on the instrument panel.

Major malfunction

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message.

! **You must stop the vehicle.**
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

e-EAT8 electric automatic gearbox (Rechargeable hybrid)

Automatic 8-speed gearbox with a push selector and regenerative braking function.
With the exception of manual mode and regenerative braking, the operation is identical to that of other EAT8 gearboxes.
For more information on the **Operation** or the **Malfunctions** of the EAT8 gearbox, refer to the corresponding sections.

Gearbox selector positions

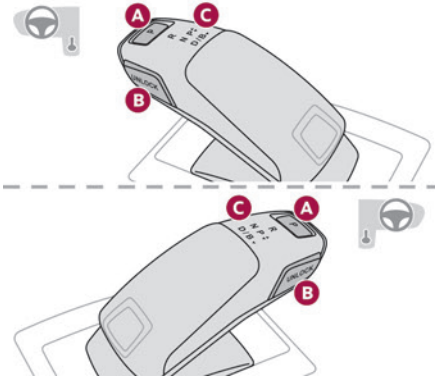
P. Car park
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.

R. Reverse gear

N. Neutral
For moving the vehicle with the ignition off: in certain car washing machines, when towing the vehicle, etc.

D/B. Automatic forward gear (**D**) or automatic forward gear with regenerative braking (**B**) The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load. With the regenerative braking function activated, the gearbox also controls braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

Push selector



A. Button **P**
To put the gearbox into Park mode.

B. **Unlock** button
To unlock the gearbox and come out of **P** or to change to **R**, with the foot on the brake pedal. Press and hold this button before pushing the selector.

C. Gearbox selector indicator lamps **(R, N, D/B)**

! To exit Park mode, wait for the READY indicator lamp to come on.

Displays in the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the status of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel:
P: park.
R: reverse.
N: neutral.
D1 to D8: automatic forward gear.
B1 to B8: automatic forward gear with regenerative braking function activated.
In all-electric driving, the gear engaged is not indicated.
The state of the gearbox remains displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds after switching off the ignition.

Regenerative braking (Brake function)

The regenerative braking function emulates engine braking, slowing the vehicle with no need to depress the brake pedal. When the driver releases the accelerator pedal, the vehicle slows down more quickly.
The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is used to partially recharge the traction battery.

i This partial recharging has no effect on the charge level indicator.

! The resulting deceleration of the vehicle does not cause the brake lamps to come on.

► From mode **D/B**, move the push selector backwards to activate/deactivate the function. **D** on the instrument panel is replaced with **B**. The state of the function is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

! In some situations (e.g. battery full, extreme temperatures), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration.
The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.

i **Regenerative braking using the brake pedal**
Energy recovery can also be produced by depressing the brake pedal in order to partially recharge the traction battery, without affecting the charge level indicator.

DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION

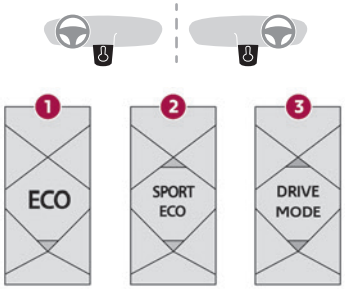
This system adapts the vehicle suspension according to the road condition and profile, the vehicle load, the driving style and the selected driving mode.
The system uses a computer and sensors, which determine the optimal level of shock absorption to be applied to each shock absorber.
The system is also associated with a camera, located at the top of the windscreen, constantly monitoring the road condition. Based on the information transmitted by the camera, the system anticipates possible road defects.
The operation of the system depends on the driving mode selected (depending on equipment).
For more information on the **Driving modes**, please refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Driving modes

The driving modes available depend on the engine and equipment of the vehicle.
Driving modes are selected using one of the following controls (depending on version):



1. Pressing the control activates **Eco** mode. The indicator lamp comes on.
2. Pressing the front of the control activates **Sport** mode; pressing the rear activates **Eco** mode. The corresponding indicator lamp comes on.
3. Pressing the control displays the modes on the instrument panel.

The selected mode is activated immediately.
With the Advanced Traction Control optimising traction, additional driving modes are available.
For more information on **Advanced Traction Control**, refer to the corresponding section.
The choice of driving mode is also managed by the **DS SENSORIAL DRIVE** function; refer to the corresponding section.

With petrol / Diesel engines

Whenever the ignition is switched on, **Normal** driving mode is selected by default.

Eco

To reduce fuel consumption by optimising the operation of the heating and air conditioning and, depending on version, accelerator, automatic gearbox, gear shift indicator.
Free-wheeling in **Eco** mode: depending on version, with the EAT8 gearbox, switching into "free-wheeling" is encouraged to slow the vehicle down without using engine braking. You can save fuel by taking your foot gradually and fully off the accelerator pedal in anticipation of slowing down.

Comfort

To achieve more comfortable driving on poor road surfaces, over speed humps and sleeping policemen or on long journeys. In this mode, DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION utilises additional information coming from the multifunction camera (early detection of road type and road surface condition).

Normal

To restore the default settings.

Sport

To obtain more dynamic driving with action on the power steering, DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION, accelerator and gear changes (with an automatic gearbox), acoustic ambience of the engine and the possibility of displaying the vehicle's dynamic settings on the instrument panel.

Manual

Permanent **Manual** mode with an automatic gearbox and DS PARK PILOT.
To change gears manually using the control paddles on the steering wheel.

With Rechargeable hybrid engines

Whenever the ignition is switched on, **Electric** driving mode is selected by default.

Electric

Allows driving using 100% electrical energy.
The maximum speed is approximately 84 mph (135 km/h).
When starting the vehicle, if the conditions do not allow the activation or retention of **Electric** mode, the message "**Electric mode currently unavailable**" is displayed on the instrument panel.
The vehicle automatically changes to **Hybrid** mode.
If an LED comes on under the interior rear view mirror, visible from outside the vehicle, this confirms that you are driving in **Electric** mode (depending on country of sale).

i The LED can be deactivated by inserting the tip of a paper clip or other similar object into the hole located underneath the interior rear view mirror.

Conditions of activation

– Adequate battery charge level. Charging the vehicle after each drive is therefore recommended. **Electric** mode is available as long as there is power left in the battery.
– Outside temperature between approximately -5°C and 45°C.

Manually exiting the mode

▶ Fully depress the accelerator pedal, or
▶ Select another mode.

i In case of non-use of the vehicle for a long period (several months), a restart of the petrol engine may occur even if the battery is charged.

i Depending on equipment, **Electric** mode is combined with **Normal** mode of the DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION function.
For more information on **DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION**, refer to the corresponding section.

! In the event of multiple starts of the internal combustion engine without a sufficient rise in temperature, **Electric** mode may be temporarily unavailable (natural phenomenon of dilution of fuel in oil). The message "**Electric mode unavailable: automatic operation in progress**" then appears on the instrument panel.
To regain normal electrical operation, drive approximately 50 miles (80 km) in "motorway" conditions or approximately 125 miles (200 km) in urban conditions.
This phenomenon does not cause any mechanical or electrical damage. It can occur several times in the life of the vehicle.

Hybrid

To optimise the vehicle's fuel consumption by managing the **alternating or simultaneous operation of the two types of engine**, depending on driving conditions and driving style.
In **Hybrid** mode, it is possible to drive in 100% electric mode if the battery charge level is sufficient and acceleration requirements are moderate.

i Depending on equipment, **Hybrid** mode is combined with **Normal** mode of the DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION function.
For more information on **DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION**, refer to the corresponding section.

Sport

To obtain more dynamic driving in order to benefit from the maximum performance of the vehicle.
Electric power is used to supplement the petrol engine as long as there is energy left in the battery.

Depending on equipment, **Sport** mode is combined with **Sport** mode of the **DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION** function.
For more information on **DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION**, refer to the corresponding section.

Comfort

(Depending on equipment)
Combines **Hybrid** mode and **Comfort** mode of the DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION function.
To favour flexible shock absorption improving driving comfort on poor surfaces.

For more information on **DS ACTIVE SCAN SUSPENSION**, refer to the corresponding section.

4WD (4-wheel drive)

(Depending on version)
Improves the vehicle's grip at low and moderate speeds by driving all 4 wheels continuously.
4WD mode (4-wheel drive) is especially suited to driving on snow-covered roads and difficult terrain (e.g. mud, sand) as well as ford crossings, at moderate speed.
Depending on the driving conditions and the battery charge level, **4WD** mode may be 100% electric.
If the system does not detect a situation of wheel slipping or poor grip after 300 metres of driving, it switches to **Hybrid** mode.

This mode will be even more effective if the vehicle is fitted with suitable tyres, such as winter tyres.

The grip can be improved up to 84 mph (135 km/h) using the electric motors; above this speed, the vehicle is driven by the front wheels only.

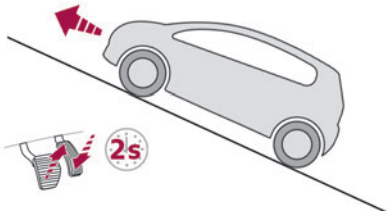
Hill start assist

This system keeps your vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
This system is only active when:
- The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
- Certain slope conditions are met.
- The driver's door is closed.

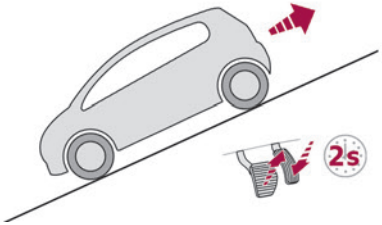
Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.
If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. After that, ensure that the parking brake indicator lamp and the indicator lamp **P** in the electric parking brake control lever are on fixed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, using the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

Operation



Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal:
- If mode **D** or **M** is selected on an automatic gearbox.



Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal.

Malfunction

If the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Gear shift indicator

(Depending on engine)
This system is designed to reduce fuel consumption by recommending the most suitable gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the system may recommend skipping one or more gears.
Gear engagement recommendations are not to be considered mandatory. Indeed, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the system's advice.
The system cannot be deactivated.

> i With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.

The information appears on the instrument panel, in the form of an arrow and the recommended gear.

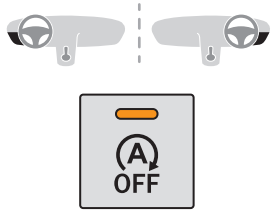
> i The system adapts the gear change instructions according to the driving conditions (e.g. slope, load) and driving style (e.g. power demand, acceleration, braking).
> The system never suggests:
> – engaging first gear;
> – engaging reverse gear.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stationary (e.g. red lights, traffic jams). The engine automatically restarts - START mode - as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.
Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.
The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

Deactivation/Reactivation

The function is **activated** by default when the ignition is switched on.
To deactivate/reactivate the function:



► Press the button.
A message on the instrument panel confirms the change of status.
When the function is deactivated, the orange indicator lamp is lit; if the engine was in standby, it restarts immediately.

Associated indicator lamps

Function activated.

Function deactivated or malfunction.

> ! **Opening the bonnet**
> Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.

Driving on flooded roads
Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation

Main conditions for operation

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- The level of charge in the battery must be sufficient.
- The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
- The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically enters standby mode as soon as the driver indicates their intention to stop:
- **With an automatic gearbox,** at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h) on BlueHDi versions, or below 2 mph (3 km/h) on PureTech 130, 180 and 225 versions, when you depress the brake pedal or place the gear selector in mode **N**.

Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases:

The engine will not go into standby if the conditions for operation are not met and in the following cases:
- Steep slope (ascending or descending).
- Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Demisting active.

In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Restarting the engine (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again:
With an automatic gearbox:
- With the selector in mode **D** or **M**: with the brake pedal released.
- With the selector in mode **N** and the brake pedal released: with the selector at **D** or **M**.
- With the selector in mode **P** and the brake pedal depressed: with the selector at **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**.
- With reverse gear engaged.

Special cases

The engine will restart automatically if the conditions for operation are met again and in the following cases:
- Vehicle speed exceeds 2.5 mph (4 km/h) with PureTech 130, 180 and 225 versions, or 16 mph (25 km/h) with BlueHDi versions.

In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions

In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments on the instrument panel, then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on if there is a fault.
► Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the "**START/STOP**" button.

12 V battery
The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.

All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Under-inflation detection

This system alerts the driver when one or more tyres have a drop in pressure.
The alert is raised when the vehicle is moving, not when stationary.
It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**.
It takes the last values stored during the reinitialisation request into account. It is therefore essential that the tyre pressure is correct during the operation. This operation is the driver's responsibility.

! The tyre under-inflation detection cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):
- worsens road-holding.
- lengthens braking distances.
- causes premature wear of the tyres.
- increases energy consumption.

i The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

! **Checking tyre pressures**
This check should be done monthly when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

i **Snow chains**
The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Under-inflation alert

This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.
► Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
► Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected may not always cause visible deformation of the tyre.
Do not rely on just a visual check.

► Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of all four tyres when cold.
► If it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
► In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

! Driving too slowly may not ensure optimum monitoring.
The alert is not immediately triggered in the event of a sudden loss of pressure or tyre blow-out. This is because analysis of the values read by the wheel's speed sensors can take several minutes.
The alert may be delayed at speeds below 25 mph (40 km/h), or when adopting a sporty driving mode.

i The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

► The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.

! Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the

vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label.
Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation.
The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

With the vehicle stationary, the system is reinitialised via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.
► In this menu, select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab.
► On this page, select the "**Under-inflation initialisation**" function.
► Select "**Yes**" to confirm.
The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel.
A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.
In this case, the tyre under-inflation monitoring function is no longer performed.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

"Space-saver" type spare wheel
The use of this type of spare wheel may suspend tyre pressure monitoring.
In this case, the malfunction warning lamp comes on and disappears once the wheel has been replaced by one of uniform size (the same as the others), the pressure readjusted and the reinitialisation carried out.

Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations

Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their manoeuvres before using the direction indicator and changing lanes.
These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.

Driving aids
You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.

Manoeuvring aids
The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

Radar(s)
The operation of the radar(s), along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g. mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, snow), or if the bumpers are damaged.
If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar(s).

Driving aids camera
This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windscreen area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle

(headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.
In the event of a windscreen replacement, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

Other cameras
The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

Sensors
The operation of the sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

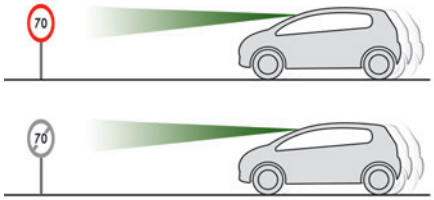
Maintenance
Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

Mats/Pedal trims
The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

Units of speed
Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.
If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.
In case of doubt, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Road signs recognition

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system displays the maximum speed authorised locally on the instrument panel, using:
- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit information from the navigation system's mapping.

! The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.
This should be taken into account to ensure you observe the speed limit.
For the system to work properly when changing countries, the speed unit of the instrument panel must match that of the country you are driving in.

! Automatic sign reading is a driving aid system and does not always display the correct speed limits.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over those displayed by the system.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

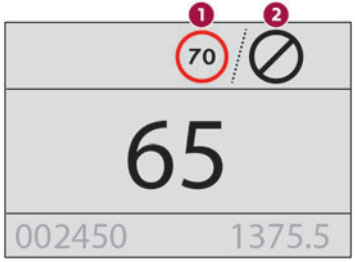
i Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.
The display of the speed limit on the instrument panel is updated when passing a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Activation/Deactivation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



1. Detected speed limit indication
   or
2. End of speed limit indication

The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.

On detecting speed limit information, the system displays the value.

For a suggested maximum speed, the first time that the vehicle exceeds it **by more than 3 mph (5 km/h)** (e.g. 59 mph (95 km/h)), the speed is displayed and flashes for 10 seconds (depending on version).

Operating limits

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits, especially those imposed in the following cases:
- Poor weather (rain, snow).
- Atmospheric pollution.
- Towing.
- Driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted.
- Tyre repaired using the temporary puncture repair kit.
- Young drivers.

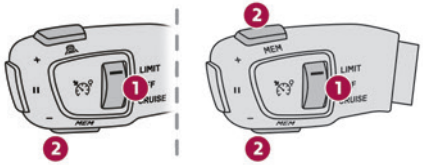
The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:
- Road signs that are obstructed, non-standard, damaged or bent.
- Obsolete or incorrect maps.

Recommendation

In addition to **Road signs recognition**, the driver can select the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control 'store' button.

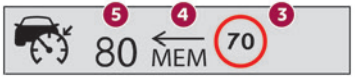
> i For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering-mounted controls



1. Speed limiter/cruise control mode selection
2. Memorise the speed setting

Information displayed on the instrument panel



3. Speed limit indication
4. Speed memorisation prompt
5. Current speed setting

Storing the speed setting

► Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control.
The speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.
Upon detecting a sign suggesting a new speed setting, the system displays the value and "**MEM**" flashes for a few seconds, prompting you to save it as a new speed setting.

> i If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (9 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Road signs recognition, the "**MEM**" symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.

► Press button **2once** to save the suggested speed value.
A message is displayed, confirming the request.
► Press button **2again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.
The display then reverts to its previous state.

Extended Traffic Sign Recognition

> ! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This additional system recognises these road signs and displays them on the instrument panel if the appropriate display mode is selected:
– **No entry:** when entering a lane in the wrong direction, an alert message, including the symbol of this sign, is displayed on the instrument panel (request to check the direction of traffic).
– **Other signs:** as you approach it, the symbol of the corresponding sign is displayed on the instrument panel.
The selected display mode must be "**Driving**".

! The actual road signs always take priority over those displayed by the system.
The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Activation / Deactivation

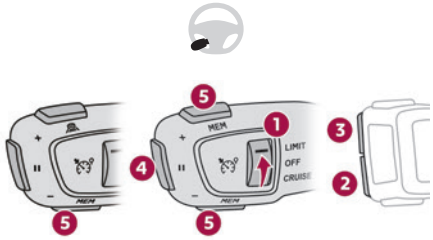
It is set via the **Driving** / **Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Speed limiter

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).
The speed limiter is switched on manually.
The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).
The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

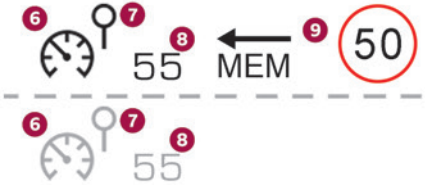
Steering-mounted control



1. ON (**LIMIT** position)/OFF
2. Reduce the speed setting
3. Increase the speed setting
4. Pause/resume speed limiter with the speed setting previously stored
5. Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition (**MEM** display)

For more information on the **Road signs recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter on/pause status indication
7. Speed limiter mode selection indication
8. Speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function

Switching on/Pausing

► Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**LIMIT**" position to select speed limiter mode; the function is paused.
► If the limit speed setting is suitable (most recent speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.
► Pressing button **4** again temporarily pauses the function.

i When the speed setting remains below the vehicle's speed for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is emitted.

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.
To modify the limit speed setting based on the vehicle's current speed:
► Briefly press button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
► Press and hold button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 5 mph (8 km/h).

To modify the cruise speed setting based on the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition, as shown on the instrument panel:

► Press button **5** once; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.

► Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed is immediately shown on the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

► Fully depress the accelerator pedal.

The speed limiter is temporarily deactivated and the displayed speed setting flashes.

► Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the speed setting.

When exceeding the speed is not due to the driver's action (e.g. in case of a steep slope), an audible signal is triggered immediately.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting.
If necessary, apply the brakes to control your vehicle's speed.

When the vehicle speed returns to the speed setting level, the speed limiter operates again: the speed setting display becomes fixed again.

Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**OFF**" position: speed limiter information is no longer displayed.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cruise control - Specific recommendations

! The cruise control function does not guarantee compliance with the maximum authorised speed and the safety distance between vehicles, the driver remains responsible for their driving.
In the interest of public safety, only use cruise control if the traffic conditions enable vehicles to drive at a steady speed and maintain an adequate safety distance.
Remain vigilant while cruise control is activated. If you press and hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, your vehicle may change speed very abruptly.

When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the vehicle speed.
On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

i **Exceeding the programmed speed setting**
You can **temporarily** exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes).
To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when the set speed is reached again, the displayed speed stops flashing).

! **Operating limits**
Never use the system in the following situations:
- In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
- In heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function).
- On winding or steep roads.
- On slippery or flooded roads.
- In poor weather conditions.
- In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
- Driving on a speed circuit.
- Driving on a rolling road.
- When using a 'space-saver' type spare wheel.

– When using snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

Programmable cruise control

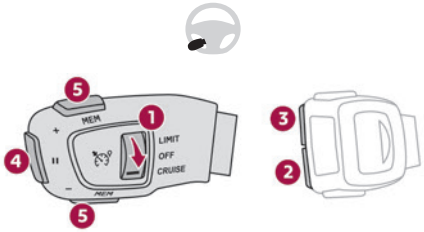
! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and the **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.

This system automatically maintains the vehicle's speed at the value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without the use of the accelerator pedal.
Cruise control is switched on manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).
With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** must be engaged.

i Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on engines fitted with the Stop & Start function.

i Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

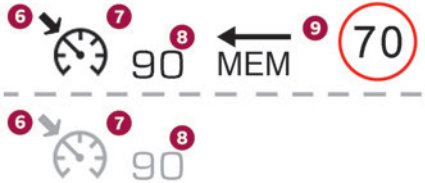
Steering-mounted control



1. ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF
2. Activate cruise control at the current speed/ decrease speed setting
3. Activate cruise control at the current speed/ increase speed setting
4. Pause/resume cruise control with the speed setting previously saved
5. Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition (**MEM** display)

For more information on the **Road signs recognition**, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



6. Cruise control pause/resume
7. Cruise control mode selection
8. Speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function

Switching on/pausing

► Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.
► Press button **2** or **3** to activate cruise control and save a speed setting when the vehicle has reached the desired speed; the vehicle's current speed is saved as the speed setting.
► Release the accelerator pedal.
► Pressing button **4** temporarily pauses the function.
► Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

i Cruise control can also be paused temporarily:
- by pressing the brake pedal.
- automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.

Modifying the cruise speed setting

Cruise control must be active.
To modify the cruise speed setting, based on the current speed of the vehicle:
► Briefly press button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h).
► Press and hold button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h).

! Pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of the vehicle.

! As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition shown on the instrument panel:
► Press button **5** once; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
► Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed is immediately shown on the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**OFF**" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

DS DRIVE ASSIST

Only available on versions with automatic gearbox.
This system automatically adjusts the speed and corrects the trajectory of the vehicle, using Adaptive cruise control with Stop&Go function in conjunction with Lane Positioning Assist.
These two functions must be activated and in operation.
For more information on **Adaptive cruise control** and **Lane Positioning Assist**, refer to the corresponding sections.

! The system assists the driver by acting on the steering, acceleration and braking within the physical limits and capacities of the vehicle. Certain road infrastructure elements or vehicles in the surroundings may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and radar, resulting in an unexpected change in direction, a lack of steering correction and/or inappropriate management of acceleration or braking.

! Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

Adaptive cruise control

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and the **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.

This system automatically maintains the vehicle speed at a value set by the driver (speed setting), while respecting a safety distance from the vehicle in front (target vehicle) previously set by the driver. The system automatically manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle.
With the **Stop function**, the system manages braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

With the **Stop & Go function**, the system manages braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop and restarts the vehicle.

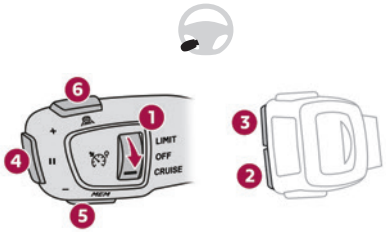
! The brake lamps come on if the vehicle is slowed down by the system.
It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lamps are not in perfect working order.

To do this, the system uses a camera fitted at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar fitted in the front bumper.

! Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

i If the driver activates the direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, cruise control may temporarily reduce the distance to the target vehicle to facilitate overtaking, without exceeding the speed setting.

Steering-mounted controls



1. ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF
2. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/decrease speed setting
3. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/increase speed setting
4. Pause/resume cruise control with the speed setting previously saved
   Confirmation of vehicle restart after automatic stop (versions with Stop & Go function)
5. Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition (**MEM** display)
6. Display and adjustment of the distance setting to the vehicle in front

Use

Activating the system (pause)

► With the engine running, turn the thumbwheel **1** downwards to the **CRUISE** position. Cruise control is ready to operate (grey display).

Switching on cruise control and setting the speed

With an automatic EAT6 gearbox, your speed must be between 1 and 112 mph (2 and 180 km/h).
With an automatic EAT8 gearbox, your speed must be between 0 and 112 mph (0 and 180 km/h).
► Press button **2** or **3**: the current speed becomes the speed setting (minimum 19 mph (30 km/h)) and cruise control is immediately activated (green display).
► Press **3** to increase or **2** to decrease the speed setting (steps of 5 mph (km/h) if held pressed).

! Pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of the vehicle.

Pausing/resumption of cruise control

► Press **4** or depress the **brake pedal**. To pause cruise control, it is also possible to:
- shift from mode **D** to **N**;
- Press the electric parking brake control.

► Press **4** to restart cruise control. Cruise control may have been paused automatically:
- by triggering of the ESC system.

With an EAT6 gearbox, following braking that has brought the vehicle to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; cruise control is paused. The driver should depress the accelerator pedal to move off, then, when above 1 mph (2 km/h), reactivate the system by pressing one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.

With an EAT8 gearbox, following braking that has brought the vehicle to a complete stop, if the traffic conditions do not allow the vehicle to begin moving again within 3 seconds of stopping, press button **4** or the accelerator pedal to move off.
If the driver takes no action after the vehicle has been stopped, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after about 5 minutes.

i Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type.

! When the driver attempts to reactivate cruise control, after the function has been paused, the message "Activation not possible, unsuitable conditions" is briefly displayed if reactivation is not possible (safety conditions not met).

Changing the programmed speed setting with the Road signs recognition function

► Press **5** to accept the speed suggested by the function on the instrument panel, then press again to confirm.

! To prevent sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, select a speed setting relatively close to the vehicle's current speed.

Changing the inter-vehicle distance

► Press **6** to display the distance setting thresholds ("Distant", "Normal" or "Close"), then press again to select a threshold.
After a few seconds, the option is accepted and will be memorised when the ignition is switched off.

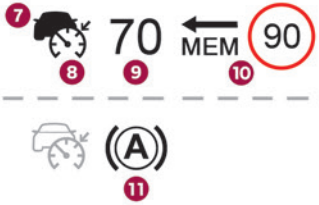
Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

► Press the accelerator pedal fully. Distance monitoring and cruise control are deactivated while acceleration is maintained. "Cruise control suspended" is displayed.

Deactivating the system

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** upwards to the **OFF** position.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



7. Vehicle detected by the system (full symbol)
8. Cruise control active (colour not grey)
9. Speed setting value
10. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function
11. Vehicle held stationary (versions with automatic gearbox)

12. Inter-vehicle distance setting
13. Position of the vehicle detected by the system

Messages and alerts

The digital instrument panel's "**Driving**" display mode must have been selected first.

i The actual order in which these messages or alerts are displayed may vary.

"**Cruise paused**" or "**Cruise control on hold**" following brief acceleration by the driver.

"**Active cruise control**", no vehicle detected.

"**Cruise paused**", vehicle detected.

"**Active cruise control**", vehicle detected.

(orange)
"**Take back control**".
► Brake or accelerate, depending on the context.

(red)
"**Take back control**".

► **Take back control of the vehicle immediately**: the system cannot manage the current driving situation.

"**Activation refused, conditions unsuitable**".
The system refuses to activate cruise control, as the necessary conditions are not fulfilled.

Stop function

"**Cruise paused**" (for a few seconds).
The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is keeping it immobilised: cruise control is paused.
The driver must accelerate to move off again, then reactivate cruise control.

Stop & Go function

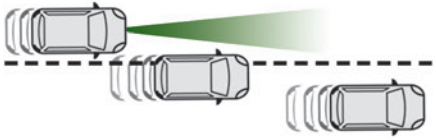
"**To pick up again: accelerate or press the II button**" (button **4**).
The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop.
Within 3 seconds, the vehicle gradually and automatically begins moving again.
Beyond 3 seconds, the driver must accelerate or press button **4** to move off again.

! While the vehicle is immobilised, the following recommendations apply:
- The driver should not leave the vehicle.
- Do not open the boot.
- Do not drop off or pick up passengers.
- Do not engage reverse gear.

! When moving off again, watch out for cyclists, pedestrians and animals, as they may not be detected properly.

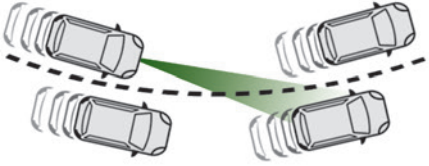
Operating limits

Cruise control operates by day and night, in dry weather or moderate rainfall.
Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require driver intervention.
Cases not taken into account by the system:
- Pedestrians, cyclists, animals.
- Stationary vehicles (e.g. traffic jams, breakdown).

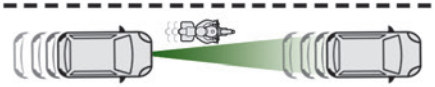


- Vehicles crossing your lane.
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

Situations where the driver must suspend the system:

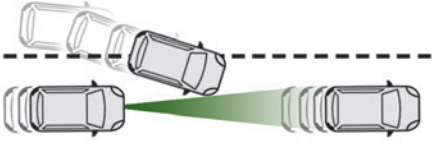


- Vehicles in a tight bend.
- When approaching a roundabout.



- When following a narrow vehicle.

Reactivate the system when conditions allow.
Situations in which the driver is prompted to immediately resume control:
- Excessively sharp deceleration by the vehicle in front of you.



- When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

! Some vehicles on the road may be poorly perceived or interpreted by the camera and/or the radar (e.g. truck), which can lead to an incorrect evaluation of distances and result in inappropriate acceleration or braking of the vehicle.

! Pay particular attention:
- When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered across the traffic lane.

– When entering a tunnel or crossing a bridge.

! If any of the following malfunctions occurs, do not use the system:
– Following an impact on the windscreen close to the camera or on the front bumper (versions with radar).
– Brake lamps not working.

! If the vehicle has undergone any of the following modifications, do not use the system:
– Carrying long objects on roof bars.
– Towing.
– Front end of the vehicle modified (for example by adding long-range headlamps or painting the front bumper).
– Obstructed radar.

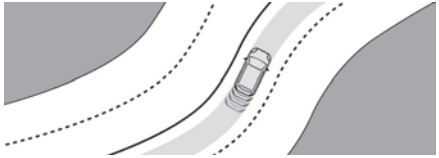
Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed instead of the speed setting.

This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, to confirm the malfunction.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Lane positioning assist

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



The system identifies the edges of the traffic lane and steers the vehicle to keep it inside this lane and maintain the lateral position chosen by the driver.
To do this, the system uses a camera placed on the upper part of the windscreen.
This system is particularly suited to driving on motorways and main roads.

Operating conditions

– Adaptive cruise control active.
– Traffic lane marked out by lines on both sides.
– ESC system operational.
– ASR system activated.
– No trailer detected.
– No 'space-saver' spare wheel in use.
– Vehicle not subject to strong lateral g-forces.
– Direction indicators not activated.

Activation/Deactivation

► With the Adaptive cruise control with Stop & Go function activated, press this button.
The action is confirmed by:
– The indicator lamp in the button lighting up green.
– The following symbol being displayed on the instrument panel.
The colour of the symbol on the instrument panel depends on the operating status of the system:

(grey colour)
One or more operating conditions is not met; the system is paused.

(green colour)
All operating conditions are met; the system is active.

(orange colour)
System malfunction.
If the driver no longer wishes to use the system for a while, they can deactivate it by pressing the button again.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off and the symbol disappears from the instrument panel.

i The system status is saved when the ignition is switched off.

Cruise control

The driver must hold the steering wheel properly. When cruise control is activated, the symbol is displayed in green: by small steering actions, the system directs the vehicle and keeps it in the position chosen by the driver, in the traffic lane. This position is not necessarily the centre of the lane.
The driver can feel movements in the steering wheel.
The driver can change the position of the vehicle at any time, by turning the steering wheel. When the driver feels that the vehicle's position is appropriate, whilst keeping hands on the steering wheel, they must release the pressure to let the system resume control of the steering, but the vehicle will not be automatically centred within the lane.

Pausing/Suspending the system

! The driver must act promptly if they believe that the traffic conditions or the state of the road surface require their intervention, by moving the steering wheel to temporarily suspend system operation. Any intervention on the brake pedal that causes the Adaptive cruise control to pause will also cause the system to pause.

! If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough, it triggers a series of gradual alerts and then deactivates itself if there is no response from the driver.

i If the function is suspended due to the prolonged release of the force holding the steering wheel, the function must be reactivated by pressing the button again.

Automatic pause

- Triggering of the ESC.
- Prolonged failure to detect one of the lane limit markings. In this case, the Active lane departure warning system function can take over, and the system will reactivate itself once the operating conditions are met again.

In response to action by the driver: suspension

- Activation of the direction indicators.
- Travelling outside the lane limits.
- Too tight a grip on the steering wheel or dynamic action on the steering wheel.
- Action on the brake pedal (resulting in a pause until cruise control is reactivated) or accelerator pedal (suspension for as long as the pedal is depressed).
- Pausing of Adaptive cruise control.
- Deactivation of the ASR.

Driving situations and related alerts

The tables below describe the displays associated with the main driving situations.
The actual order of display of these alerts may be different.

Button indicator lamp	Cruise control thumbwheel	Symbols	Display	Comments
Off	**CRUISE**	(grey)	(grey)	Cruise paused. Lane positioning assist not activated.
Off	**CRUISE**	70 (green)	(grey)	Active cruise control. Lane positioning assist not activated.
Green	**CRUISE**	70 (green)	(green)	DS DRIVE ASSIST activated. The system is operating normally (correction is made at the steering wheel).
Green	**CRUISE**	70 (grey)	(grey)	DS DRIVE ASSIST paused.
Green	**CRUISE**	70 (green)/(grey)	(grey)	DS DRIVE ASSIST activated. All the operating conditions for lane positioning assist have not been met.
Green	**OFF** or **LIMIT**	(grey)	(grey)	Cruise control deactivated. All the operating conditions for lane positioning assist have not been met.

Button indicator lamp	Cruise control thumbwheel	Symbols	Display	Comments
Green	**CRUISE**	(green)/(grey)	(grey)	DS DRIVE ASSIST suspended. Cruise control and lane positioning assist are suspended.

Messages	Driving situations
"**Activate cruise control to use lane positioning assist**"	Activation of lane positioning assist while cruise control is not active.
"**Conditions unsuitable - Awaiting activation**"	Activation of lane positioning assist while not all conditions are met.
"**Keep your hands on the steering wheel**"	Prolonged driving without holding the steering wheel, holding it improperly or without applying any force.
"**Hold the steering wheel**"	Actual or imminent loss of lane positioning assist.
"**Take back control**"	Simultaneous loss of cruise control and lane positioning assist.

Operating limits

i The system may issue an alert when the vehicle is travelling on a long, straight road with smooth road surface even if the driver thinks they are holding the steering wheel correctly.

The system may not operate or may produce unsuitable corrections to the steering in the following situations:
- Poor visibility (insufficient road lighting, snowfall, rain, fog).
- Dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a wet road surface, leaving a tunnel, alternating light and shade).
- Windscreen area in front of the camera dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker.
- Lane markings eroded, partially hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, surface joints).
- Travelling in a tight bend.
- Winding roads.
- Presence of a tarmac joint on the road.

Risk of undesirable operation

! The system should be deactivated in the following situations:
- Driving with a "space-saver" type spare wheel.
- When towing or with a bicycle carrier attached to a towing device, particularly when a trailer is not connected or the trailer is not an approved type.
- Adverse weather conditions.
- Driving on slippery road surfaces (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
- In roadworks or toll booth areas.
- Driving on racing circuits.

– Driving on a rolling road.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, the Service warning lamp comes on and this (orange) symbol appears on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

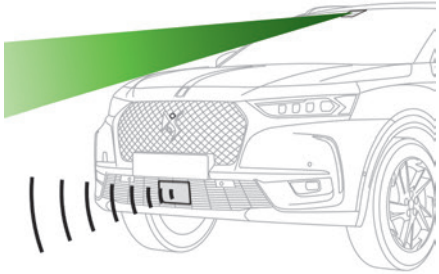
! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system:
– warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front.
– reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or limit its severity.

i The speed will be reduced by a maximum of 16 mph (25 km/h) for versions with camera only, or by a maximum of 31 mph (50 km/h) for versions with camera and radar.

i The system also takes motorcyclists and animals into account; however, animals below 0.5 m tall and objects on the road are not necessarily detected.

This system is comprised of three functions:
– Collision Risk Alert.
– Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA).
– Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a multifunction camera located at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.

! This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor traffic conditions in accordance with applicable driving regulations.

i As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating conditions and limits

Vehicle moving forward.
ESC system operational.
Seat belts fastened for all passengers.
Stabilised speed on roads with few bends.
In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:
– Towing a trailer.
– Carrying long objects on roof bars.

– Vehicle with snow chains fitted.
– Before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running.
– Before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop.
– Towed vehicle, engine running.
– Following an impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.

i The system is automatically deactivated once the use of a different diameter "space-saver" type spare wheel is detected, or if a fault with the two lateral brake lamps is detected.

! It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lamps are not in perfect working order.

! It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

! Following an impact, the system is automatically deactivated.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Collision Risk Alert

This function warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of a collision with the vehicle in front or with a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This trigger threshold determines the sensitivity with which the function warns of the risk of collision.

The threshold is set via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

► Select one of the three pre-defined thresholds: "Far", "Normal" or "Close".

The last threshold selected is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert trigger threshold chosen by the driver, several different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed on the instrument panel.
The system takes account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions and the operation of the vehicle (actions on the pedals, steering wheel, etc.) to trigger the alert at the most relevant moment.

(orange)
Level 1: visual alert only, warning you that the vehicle in front is very close.
The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.

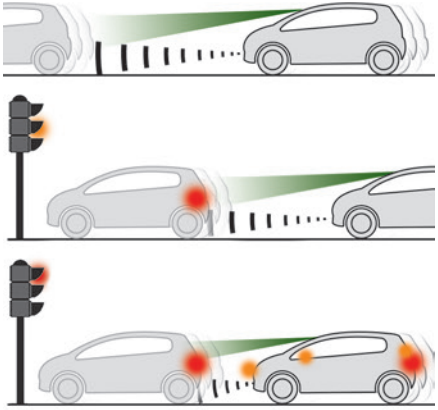
(red)
Level 2: visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.
The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.
Level 3: in some cases, a vibration alert in the form of micro-braking can be given, confirming the risk of collision.

i Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
Important: the level 1 alert is not displayed when there is a stationary obstacle or when the "**Near**" trigger threshold has been selected.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA)

This function supplements braking in the event that the driver brakes, but not enough to avoid a collision.
This assistance will only be provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alerts if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.
The system aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a collision where the driver fails to react.

i The speed will be reduced by a maximum of 16 mph (25 km/h) for versions with camera only, or by a maximum of 31 mph (50 km/h) for versions with camera and radar.

Operation

The system operates subject to the following conditions:

- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.
- The vehicle's speed is between 6 mph and 53 mph (10 km/h and 85 km/h) (versions with camera only) or 87 mph (140 km/h) (versions with camera and radar) when a moving vehicle is detected.

This warning lamp flashes (for approximately 10 seconds) as soon as the function applies the vehicle's brakes.
With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal depressed to prevent the vehicle from moving off again.

i The driver can maintain control of the vehicle at any time by firmly turning the steering wheel and/or firmly depressing the accelerator pedal.

i The brake pedal may vibrate slightly while the function is operating.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

If these warning lamps come on after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

These warning lamps light up on the instrument panel to indicate that the driver's and/or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened (depending on version). The automatic braking system is deactivated until the seat belts are fastened.

Distraction detection

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

The function comprises the "Driver Attention Warning" and "Driver Attention Warning by Camera" systems, combined, depending on version, with the "DS DRIVER ATTENTION MONITORING" system.

! These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel.
It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired.

Take a break if you are feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.

Activation/Deactivation

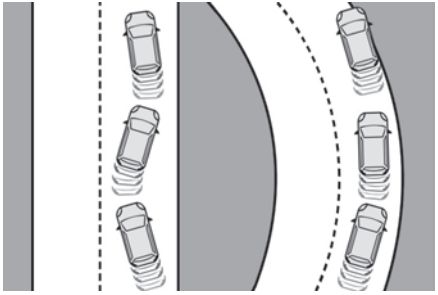
This function is set via the touch screen **Driving/Vehicle** menu.
The state of the system is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Driver Attention Warning

The system triggers an alert when it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 43 mph (70 km/h).
This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging the driver to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.
If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.
The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:
- With the engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes.
- The ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 43 mph (70 km/h), the system goes into standby.
Driving time starts being counted again once the speed reaches above 43 mph (70 km/h).

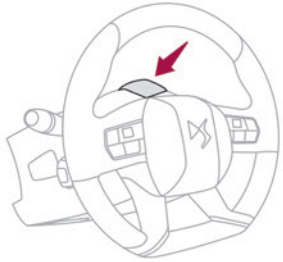
Driver Attention Warning by Camera



The system assesses the driver's level of alertness, fatigue and distraction by identifying trajectory changes in relation to the lane markings.
To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windscreen.
This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 43 mph (70 km/h)).
At a first alert level, the driver is warned by the message "**Be vigilant!**", accompanied by an audible signal.
After three first-level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message "**Dangerous driving: take a break**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

DS DRIVER ATTENTION MONITORING

(Depending on version)



An additional (infrared) camera is fitted to the steering column, behind the steering wheel, to monitor driver behaviour.
The camera analyses, firstly, the direction of the driver's gaze and head to assess their distraction level and, secondly, the closing of their eyelids to assess the level of their vigilance and attention.
When the vigilance level (distraction or loss of attention) is low, the system emits an alert.
With the "**Personal**" display mode of the digital instrument panel, the driver can select the permanent display of the "**Level of vigilance**"

diagram, which enables them to monitor this information in real time.

i The system is activated at speeds above 16 mph (25 km/h).

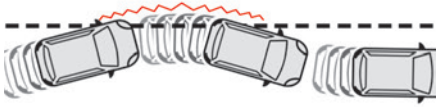
! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– system's camera field of vision blocked or obstructed.
– wearing certain types of spectacles or sunglasses that are very dark or reflective.
– face partially obscured (e.g. by a hand, by hair).
– unusual or incorrect driving position.
Under no circumstances shall the Manufacturer be held liable in the event of alerts not being given or for the consequences of using this system.

Lane departure warning system

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system, using a camera which recognises solid or broken lines, detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground.

If the driver's attention drops and the speed is higher than 37 mph (60 km/h), the system triggers a warning if there is an unexpected change of direction.
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Activation/Deactivation

The settings are changed via the **Driving/ Vehicle** touch screen menu.
The status of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.

Detection

If an unexpected change of direction is detected, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel accompanied by an audible signal.
No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is activated and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

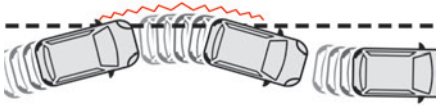
Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Active lane departure warning system

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

The system corrects the vehicle's trajectory by alerting the driver as soon as it detects a risk of involuntary lane departure or crossing of a verge or hard shoulder (depending on version).
To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windscreen, identifying the lane markings on the ground and the side of the road (depending on version).
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Operating conditions

– Vehicle speed between 43 and 112 mph (70 and 180 km/h).
– Road marked with a central dividing line.
– Steering wheel held in both hands.

- Direction indicators not activated.
- ESC system activated and operational.

! The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.
The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands in a way that allows control to be maintained in circumstances where the system is not able to intervene (for example, if the central dividing line disappears).

Operation

As soon as the system identifies a risk of involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected on the ground or a lane boundary (e.g. grass verge), it performs the trajectory correction necessary to restore the vehicle to its original lane.
The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.

This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

i The driver can prevent the correction by firmly holding the steering wheel (e.g. during an emergency manoeuvre).
The correction is interrupted immediately if the direction indicators are operated.

While the direction indicators are activated and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that a change of trajectory is intentional and no correction is triggered during this period.

Driving situations and related alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed in different driving situations.
The actual order of display of these alerts may be different.

Function status	Display	Comments
OFF		Function deactivated.
ON	None.	System active, conditions not met: – Speed below 40 mph (65 km/h). – No lane marking recognised. – ESC operation triggered. – "Sporty" driving.
ON		Automatic deactivation/standby of the function (e.g. detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel supplied with the vehicle, failure).
ON	None.	Lane marking detected. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Function status	Display	Comments
ON		The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of line crossing is detected. The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
ON	"**Hold the steering wheel**".	If, while correcting the trajectory, the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line will be crossed: the driver is warned that they must provide additional trajectory adjustment. If the steering wheel is not held properly, an audible warning sounds, accompanied by a message, until the trajectory correction is completed or the driver has grasped the steering wheel correctly. The duration of audible warnings will increase if multiple corrections are performed in quick succession. The warning will become continuous, persisting until the driver responds.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:
- ESC deactivated or operation triggered.
- Speed below 43 mph (70 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h).
- Electrical connection to a trailer.
- Use of a"space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended).
- Dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Driving over lane markings.
- Activation of the direction indicators.
- Crossing the inside line on a bend.
- Driving on a tight bend.
- Inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
- Insufficient contrast between the road surface and the verge or hard shoulder (e.g. shade).
- Lane markings worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- Close proximity to the vehicle in front (lane markings may not be detected).
- Roads that are narrow, winding.

Risk of undesirable operation

The system should be deactivated in the following situations:
- When changing a wheel or working near a wheel.
- Towing or with a bicycle carrier on a towing device, especially with trailer not plugged in or not approved.
- Road in poor condition, unstable or with very poor grip (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
- Adverse weather conditions.
- Driving on racing circuits.
- Driving on a rolling road.

Deactivation/Activation

► Press this button to deactivate/reactivate the system at any time.

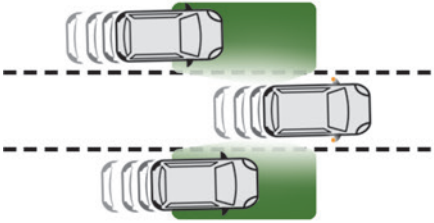
Deactivation is signalled by the lighting of the indicator lamp in the button and this warning lamp on the instrument panel.
The state of the system is stored when the ignition is switched off.

Malfunction

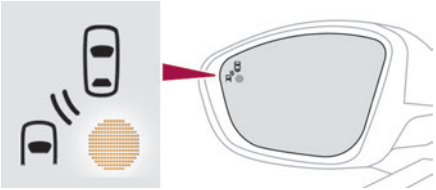
In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Blind spot monitoring

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system warns the driver of a potential danger posed by the presence of another vehicle (car, lorry, motorcycle) in the vehicle's blind spots (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision) using sensors located on the sides of the bumpers.



The warning is given by a fixed warning lamp that appears in the door mirror on the side in question:
- immediately, when being overtaken;
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

Activation/Deactivation

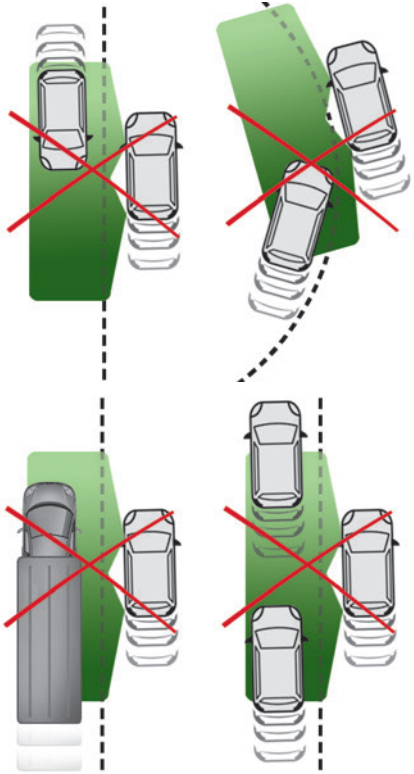
It is set via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.
When starting the vehicle, the warning lamp comes on in each mirror to indicate that the system is activated.
The status of the system is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by the Manufacturer.

Operating conditions

- All vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes.
- The speed of your vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h) (versions without Park Assist or DS PARK PILOT) or between 19 and 87 mph (30 and 140 km/h) (versions with Park Assist or DS PARK PILOT).
- When overtaking a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When overtaken by a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 16 mph (25 km/h).
- Traffic is flowing normally.
- Overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- Your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.

Operating limits



No alert is triggered in the following conditions:

- presence of stationary objects (e.g. parked vehicles, safety rails, lampposts, signs).
- vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.
- on winding roads or in case of sharp turns.
- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (e.g. truck, bus), which is both detected in a blind spot from behind and present in the driver's field of vision from the front.
- quick overtaking manoeuvre.
- very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.
- activation of the Park Assist or DS PARK PILOT function.

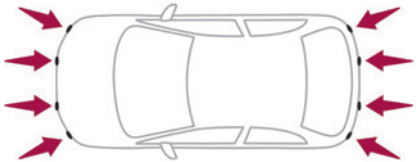
Malfunction

If the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The system may be temporarily disturbed by certain climatic conditions (e.g. rain, hail).
In particular, driving on a wet road or going from a dry to a wet area can cause false alerts (e.g. presence of a cloud of water droplets in the blind spot interpreted as a vehicle).
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors, or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the system.

Parking sensors

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

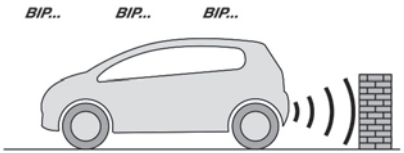


This system detects and signals the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) using sensors located in the bumper.

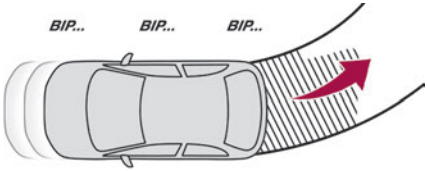
Rear parking sensors

► Engage reverse gear to start the system (confirmed by an audible signal).
The system is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged.

Audible assistance



The system signals the presence of obstacles which are both within the sensors' detection zone and in the vehicle path defined by the direction of the steering wheel.



Depending on version, in the example shown, only the obstacles present in the shaded area will be signalled by the audible assistance.
The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

Adjusting the audible signal
Depending on version, with DS CONNECT RADIO or NAVIGATION, pressing this button opens the window for adjusting the volume of the audible signal.

Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal, without taking account of the vehicle's trajectory, by displaying bars on the screen whose location represents the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle (white: more distant, orange: close, red: very close).
When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

Supplementing the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is below 6 mph (10 km/h).

Front parking sensor operation is suspended if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle relative to the vehicle, whether in front of or behind it on its path.

Side parking sensors

Using four additional sensors located on the sides of the bumpers, the system records the position of obstacles during the manoeuvre and indicates them when they are located alongside the vehicle.

Only fixed obstacles are indicated correctly. Moving obstacles detected at the beginning of the manoeuvre may be indicated mistakenly, while moving obstacles that appear alongside the vehicle but were not previously recorded will not be indicated.

! Objects memorised during the manoeuvre will no longer be stored after switching off the ignition.

Deactivation/Activation

The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.
The system status is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

i The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
In this case, the outline of a trailer is displayed at the rear of the image of the vehicle.

The parking sensors are deactivated while the Park Assist and DS PARK PILOT functions are measuring a space.
For more information on the **Park Assist** function or **DS PARK PILOT** function, refer to the corresponding section.

i When starting the vehicle, the graphic and audible aids are only available after the touch screen has started up.

Operating limits

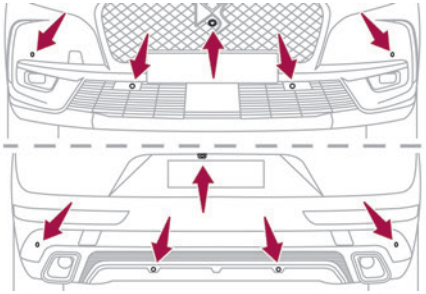
If the boot is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.

Malfunction

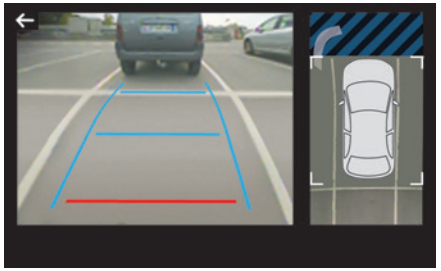
In the event of a malfunction when changing into reverse gear, one of these warning lamps lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal (short beep).
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Reversing camera - 360 Vision

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



With the engine running, these systems allow views of your vehicle's close surroundings to be displayed on the touch screen using one camera for Reversing camera and two cameras for 360 Vision.



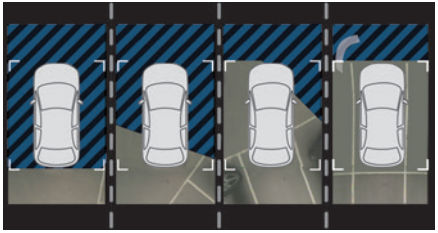
The screen is divided into two parts with a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.

The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.
Various contextual views may be displayed:
- Standard view.
- 180° rear view - 360° front and rear view.
- Zoom view.

AUTO mode is activated by default.
In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom).
You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.
► Press the button in the bottom left-hand corner of the touch screen.
► Select the type of view:
- "**Standard view**".
- "**180° view**".
- "**Zoom view**".
- "**AUTO view**".

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected.
The system status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

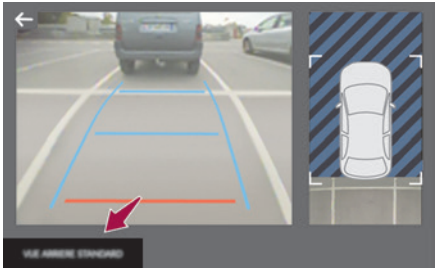
Operating principle



Using one or two cameras, the close surroundings of the vehicle are recorded whilst manoeuvring at low speed.
An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is reconstructed (represented between the brackets) in real time and as the manoeuvre progresses.
It facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen. It is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.
With 360 Vision, the image is created using both cameras, when going forward and when reversing.
When the function is activated, it is possible that the view from above is not displayed. If the system is activated when the vehicle has already moved, the view from above can be fully displayed.

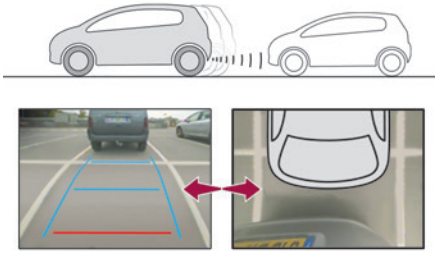
Reversing camera

Rear view



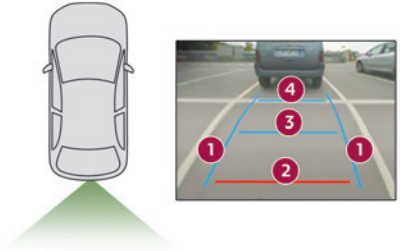
To activate the camera located on the tailgate, engage reverse gear and do not exceed a speed of 6 mph (10 km/h).
The system is deactivated:
- Automatically, at speeds above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h),
- Automatically, if the tailgate is opened.
- Upon changing out of reverse gear (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds).
- By pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default.
Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from the rear view (standard) to the view from above (zoom) as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

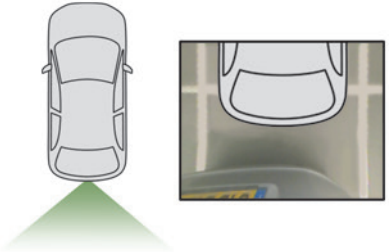
Standard view



The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

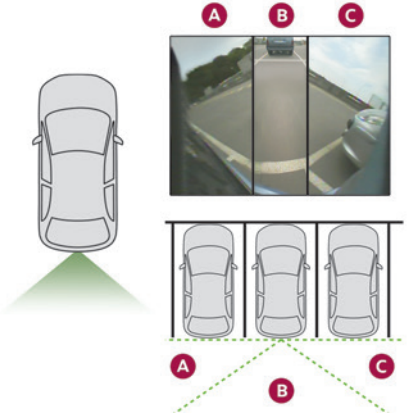
Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around nearby obstacles.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

i Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
It is important to monitor the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
Parking sensors also provide additional information about the area around the vehicle.

180° view



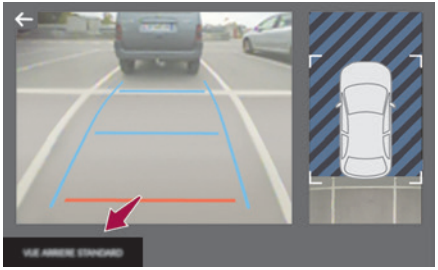
The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking space, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
It features 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.

This view is only available via the view selection menu.

360 Vision

The vehicle has a camera at the front, fitted in the grille, and a camera at the rear, located close to the tailgate opening control.
Using these cameras, the system displays the vehicle's near surroundings on the touch screen, offering views from the rear of the vehicle (rear vision) when reverse gear is engaged and views from the front of the vehicle (front vision) when the gearbox is in neutral or a gear is engaged.

Rear vision

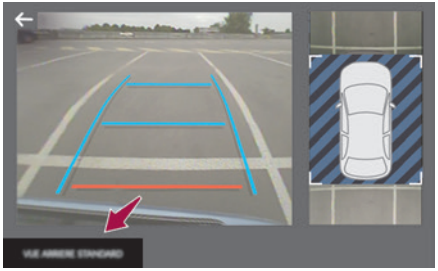


The system activates automatically when reverse gear is engaged.
The system is deactivated:
– Automatically, at speeds above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).
– When shifting out of reverse (the front vision image replaces the rear vision image for 7 seconds).
– By pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

> i If a trailer or a bicycle carrier is fitted to the towball, the area behind the vehicle on the view from above goes dark.
> The surroundings are reconstructed by the front camera only.

The rear vision views are similar to those for the Reversing camera function.
For more information on the **Reversing camera** function, refer to the corresponding section.

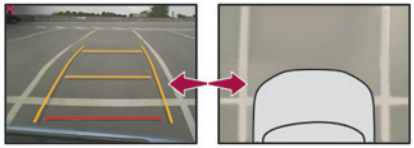
Front and rear vision



With the engine running and the speed below 12 mph (20 km/h), the system is activated via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu:

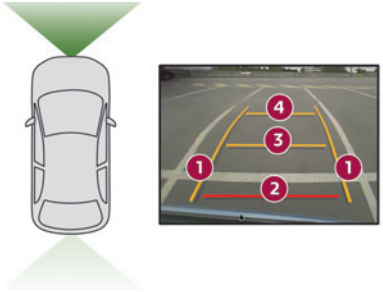
► Select "**Visual parking assistance**".
AUTO mode is displayed by default, with front vision, if the gearbox is in neutral or with a gear engaged, or with rear vision, if reverse is engaged.
The system is deactivated:
– Automatically above about 19 mph (30 km/h) (the image disappears temporarily from 12 mph (20 km/h)).
– By pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

AUTO mode



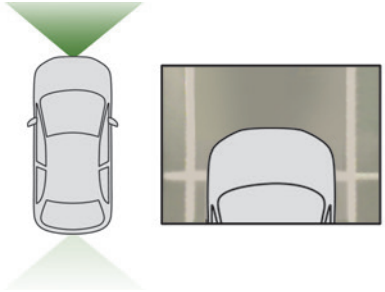
This mode is activated by default.
Using sensors in the front bumper, the automatic view changes from the front view (standard) to the view from above (zoom) as an obstacle is approached during a manoeuvre.

Standard view



The area in front of your vehicle is displayed on the screen.
The orange lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the front bumper; the two orange lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

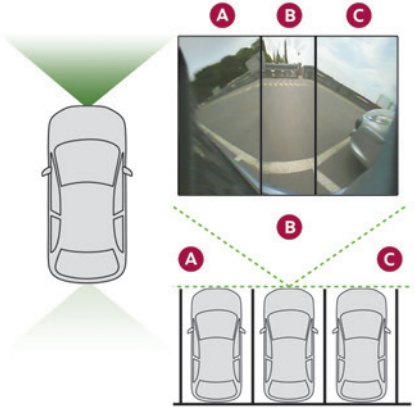
Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the front of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

> i Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
> It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
> The parking sensors also supplement the information on the vehicle's surroundings.

180° view

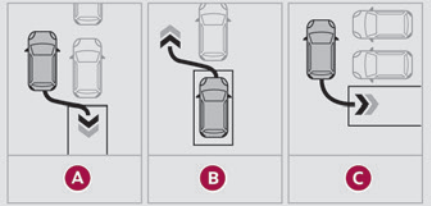


The 180° view assists with exiting from a parking space in forward gear, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
It consists of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.
This view is available only from the view selection menu.

Park Assist

> ! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system provides active parking assistance: it detects a parking space and then steers in the appropriate direction to park in the space while the driver controls the driving direction, gear changes, acceleration and braking.
To help the driver monitor the manoeuvre, the system automatically triggers the display from the Reversing camera or 360 Vision function and activates the parking sensors.
The system measures the available parking spaces and calculates the distances to obstacles using ultrasonic sensors built into the front and rear bumpers of the vehicle.



The system assists with the following manoeuvres:

A. Entering a "parallel" parking space
B. Leaving a "parallel" parking space
C. Entering a "bay" parking space

Operation

► When approaching a parking area, reduce the speed of your vehicle to 19 mph (30 km/h) or less.

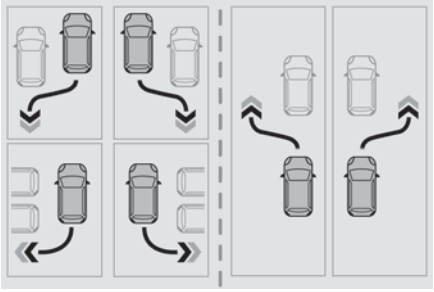
Activating the function

The function is activated in the **Vehicle/ Driving** touch screen menu.
Select "**Park Assist**".

! Activating the function deactivates the Blind spot monitoring system.

i You can deactivate the function at any time until the parking space entry or exit manoeuvre begins, by pressing the arrow located in the top left-hand corner of the display page.

Selecting the type of manoeuvre



A manoeuvre selection page is displayed on the touch screen: by default, the "Entry" page if the vehicle has been running since the ignition was switched on, otherwise, the "Exit" page.
► Select the type and side of the manoeuvre to activate the parking space search.

The selected manoeuvre can be changed at any time, even while searching for an available space.

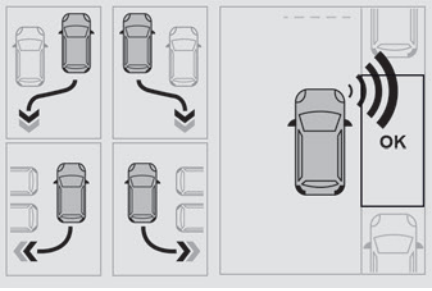
This indicator lamp comes on to confirm the selection.

Parking space search

► You should drive at a distance of between 0.50 m and 1.50 m from the row of parked vehicles, without ever exceeding 19 mph (30 km/h), until the system finds an available space.
The parking space search stops over this limit.
The function automatically deactivates once the vehicle speed exceeds 31 mph (50 km/h).

i For "parallel" parking, the space must at a minimum be equal to the length of your vehicle plus 0.60 m.
For "bay" parking, the width of the space must be equal to the width of your vehicle plus 0.70 m.

i If the parking sensors function has been deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen, it will be automatically reactivated when the system is activated.



When the system finds an available space, "**OK**" is displayed on the parking view, accompanied by an audible signal.

Preparing for the manoeuvre

► Move very slowly until the request to stop the vehicle is displayed: "**Stop the vehicle**", accompanied by the "**STOP**" sign and an audible signal.
Once the vehicle has stopped, an instructions page is displayed on the screen.
► To prepare for the manoeuvre, follow the instructions.
The start of the manoeuvre is indicated by the message "**Manoeuvre under way**", accompanied by an audible signal.
Reversing is indicated by this message: "**Release the steering wheel, reverse**".
The Reversing camera or 360 Vision function and the parking sensors are automatically activated to help you monitor your vehicle's close surroundings during the manoeuvre.

During the manoeuvre

The system controls the vehicle's steering. It gives instructions on the manoeuvring direction when starting "parallel" entry and exit parking manoeuvres, and for all "bay" entry manoeuvres. These instructions are displayed as a symbol accompanied by a message:

"Reverse".

"Go forwards".

The manoeuvring status is indicated by these symbols:

Manoeuvre in progress (green).

Manoeuvre cancelled or finished (red) (the arrows indicate that the driver must resume control of the vehicle).

The maximum speeds during manoeuvres are indicated by these symbols:

5 mph or 7 km/h, for parking space entry.

3 mph or 5 km/h, for parking space exit.

! During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel or put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any objects that could interfere with the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarf, tie, etc.).
Risk of injury!
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor the traffic, especially vehicles coming towards you.
The driver should check that no objects or people are obstructing the vehicle's path.

i The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen may be distorted by the terrain.
In shady areas, or in inadequate sunlight or lighting conditions, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

The manoeuvre can be permanently interrupted at any time, either by the driver or automatically by the system.
Interruption by the driver:
- taking over control of the steering.
- activating the direction indicator lamps on the opposite side to that of the manoeuvre.
- unfastening the driver's seat belt.
- switching off the ignition.

Interruption by the system:
- vehicle exceeding the speed limit of 5 mph (7 km/h) during parking space entry manoeuvres, or 3 mph (5 km/h) during parking space exit manoeuvres.
- activation of anti-slip regulation on a slippery road.
- opening of a door or the boot.
- engine stall.

– system malfunction.
– after 10 manoeuvres to enter or exit a parallel parking space and after 7 manoeuvres to enter a parking bay.
Interrupting the manoeuvre automatically deactivates the function.
The manoeuvre symbol is displayed in red, accompanied by the "**Manoeuvre cancelled**" message on the touch screen.
A message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle.
The function is deactivated after a few seconds; this indicator lamp goes off and the function returns to the initial display.

End of the parking space entry or exit manoeuvre

The vehicle stops as soon as the manoeuvre is completed.
The manoeuvre symbol is displayed in red, accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre completed**" on the touch screen.
When the function is deactivated, this indicator lamp goes off, accompanied by an audible signal.
When entering a parking space, the driver may be required to complete the manoeuvre.

Operating limits

– The system may suggest an inappropriate parking space (parking prohibited, work in progress with damaged road surface, location alongside a ditch, etc.).
– The system may indicate that a space has been found but will not offer it because of a fixed obstacle on the opposite side of the manoeuvre, which would not allow the vehicle to follow a trajectory required for parking.
– The system may indicate that a space has been found but the manoeuvre will not be triggered, because the width of the lane is insufficient.
– The system is not designed for performing the parking manoeuvre on a sharp bend.
– The system does not detect spaces that are much larger than the vehicle itself or that are delimited by obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs, etc.) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences, etc.).
– If the boot is heavily loaded, the tilt of the vehicle towards the rear may interfere with the distance measurements.

! Do not use the function under the following exterior conditions:
– Alongside a soft shoulder (e.g. ditch) or quay or on the edge of a drop.
– When the road surface is slippery (e.g. ice).

! If any of the following malfunctions occurs, do not use the system:
– If a tyre is under-inflated.
– If one of the bumpers is damaged.
– If one of the cameras is faulty.

! If the vehicle has undergone any of the following modifications, do not use the function:
– When carrying an object extending beyond the dimensions of the vehicle (ladder on the roof bars, bicycle carrier on the tailgate, etc.).
– With a non-approved towball in place.
– With snow chains fitted.
– When driving on a small-diameter or "space-saver" type spare wheel.
– When the wheels fitted are a different size from the original ones.
– After modifying one or both bumpers (added protection).
– If the sensors have been repainted other than by the dealer network.
– With sensors not approved for the vehicle.

Malfunctions

When the function is not activated, this indicator lamp will flash briefly and an audible signal will be emitted to indicate a system malfunction.
If the malfunction occurs while the system is in use, the indicator lamp goes off.
If the parking sensor malfunction occurs during use, indicated by one of these warning lamps coming on, it causes the function to deactivate.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
In the event of a power steering malfunction, this warning lamp is

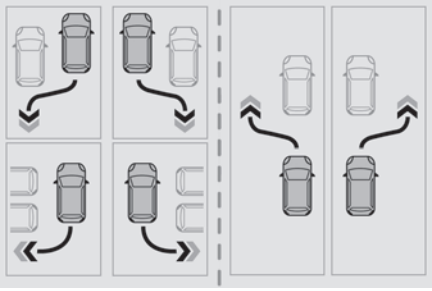
displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by a warning message.

! **You must stop the vehicle.**
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

DS PARK PILOT

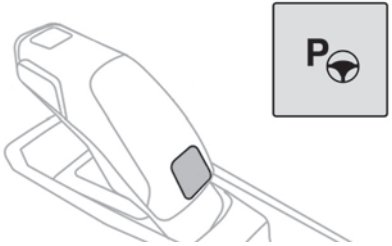
! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system provides active parking assistance for vehicles fitted with the EAT8 automatic gearbox: it detects a free "parallel" or "bay" parking space and then operates the vehicle, parking it with no need for driver intervention. It also allows you to automatically exit a "parallel" parking space.
The system controls the steering, direction, acceleration and braking. The system measures the available parking spaces and calculates the distances to obstacles using 12 ultrasonic sensors built into the front and rear bumpers of the vehicle.
To help the driver monitor the successful completion of the manoeuvre, the system automatically displays the Reversing camera or 360 Vision and activates the parking sensors.



Activation/Deactivation

To activate assistance when approaching a parking area:
► Reduce the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 19 mph (30 km/h).



► Press the button on the gear selector or, on the touch screen, select **Driving/Vehicle** > **DS PARK PILOT**.

! Activating the system deactivates Blind spot monitoring.

Sequence

Once the system is activated, the following steps will be performed successively:
– Select the type of manoeuvre via the touch screen.
– Search for an available space.
– Prepare for the manoeuvre.
– Perform the manoeuvre.
– Finalise the manoeuvre.

i You can deactivate the system at any time up until the start of the manoeuvre, by pressing the red arrow in the top left corner of the window.

! DS PARK PILOT is not always able to react automatically and appropriately due to the performance limits inherent to the system. The manoeuvre remains the responsibility of the driver, who must not leave the driving position and must never try to lock the system control button.
The driver's seat belt must remain fastened during the manoeuvre.

Manoeuvre type selection and parking space search

Depending on whether the vehicle has been driven or not since the ignition was switched on, the function offers to enter or exit a parking space on the touch screen.

► Select the type and side of the manoeuvre to activate the parking space search.

This lamp comes on to confirm activation.

You can change the type of manoeuvre at any time, including during the available parking space search phase.

► Drive at a distance of 0.50 to 1.50 m from the row of parked vehicles, not exceeding 19 mph (30 km/h), until the system finds an available space (indicated by **OK** on the display and an audible signal).

i For "parallel" parking, the space must at least equal to the length of your vehicle plus 1 m.
For "bay" parking, the space must at least equal to the width of your vehicle plus 0.70 m.

Preparing for the manoeuvre

► Move very slowly until the request to stop the vehicle and the "**STOP**" sign are displayed, accompanied by an audible signal.
Once the vehicle has stopped, an instructions page is displayed on the screen.

► To prepare for the manoeuvre, you must fulfil all of these instructions.

This symbol will be displayed automatically when the instruction has been applied.

When all of the instructions have been validated, a new page is displayed, indicating that you can undertake the manoeuvre.

► To undertake the manoeuvre, press this button.

► While holding down the button, gradually release the brake pedal.

! **The button must be held down throughout the manoeuvre.**

The start of the manoeuvre is indicated by the display of a window with the message "**Manoeuvre in progress**", accompanied by an audible signal.
The Reversing camera or 360 Vision and the parking sensors are automatically activated to help monitor the vehicle's close surroundings throughout the manoeuvre.

Performing the manoeuvre

As soon as the driver releases the brake pedal, the system automatically takes control of choosing the travel direction, forwards or reverse, acceleration, braking and the steering direction.
The manoeuvring status is indicated by these symbols:

AUTO — Manoeuvre in progress.

INTERRUPTED — Manoeuvre interrupted.

OFF — Manoeuvre completed or aborted.
The white arrows indicate that the driver must take back control of the vehicle.

The direction of the manoeuvre is indicated by these symbols:

Forward gear.

Reverse gear.

The central arrow is green whilst the vehicle is moving, or white to indicate the next manoeuvring direction.

! Throughout the whole manoeuvre, indicated by the green "**AUTO**" symbol, the driver must hold down the function control button.

! During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel or put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Beware of any object likely to block the manoeuvre (e.g. loose clothing, scarves, ties) - risk of injury!

i If the vehicle slows down significantly, the brake lamps may come on.

Suspending/resuming the manoeuvre

The manoeuvre can be interrupted temporarily at any time, either automatically by the system if an obstacle is detected, or by driver action. If the driver notices a hazard, they may also interrupt the manoeuvre permanently.
To suspend the manoeuvre, the driver can:
- Release the function control button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

– Resume control of the steering.
– Change the gearbox status (except changing to **P**).
The vehicle is immediately immobilised if the manoeuvre is suspended.
This is confirmed by the display of this symbol, accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre suspended**".

Resuming the manoeuvre after resolving the conditions for suspending it:
► Release all controls (brake pedal, function control button, steering wheel, gear selector).
► Press the function control button again.

Permanent interruption after suspending the manoeuvre:
► Depress the brake pedal and engage a gear.

Aborting the manoeuvre

The manoeuvre is aborted in the following situations:
– No action by the driver within 30 seconds of the manoeuvre being suspended.
– Intentional application of the parking brake.
– Gearbox mode **P** engaged by the driver.
– Driver's seat belt unfastened.
– Opening of a door or the boot.
– Activation of the direction indicator lamps on the opposite side to that of the manoeuvre.
– In certain cases, when a wheel of the vehicle hits a pavement or a low obstacle.
– Triggering of anti-slip regulation on a slippery road.
– Sudden appearance in the field of the manoeuvre of an obstacle not detected by the system before the manoeuvre was started, with the obstacle remaining for more than 30 seconds.
– After 10 manoeuvres to enter or exit a "parallel" parking space and after 7 manoeuvres to enter a "bay" parking space,
– System malfunction during the manoeuvre.
Abandoning the manoeuvre immediately triggers the vehicle's brakes and automatically deactivates the function.
This symbol is displayed accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre aborted**".
A message prompts the driver to take back control of the vehicle.
The function is deactivated after a few seconds; this indicator lamp goes off on the instrument panel and the initial display is resumed.
The system automatically engages gearbox mode **P** after 4 seconds.

End of manoeuvre

The vehicle stops as soon as the manoeuvre is completed.
This symbol is displayed accompanied by the message "**Manoeuvre completed**".
When the function is deactivated, this indicator lamp on the instrument panel goes off and the original display is restored.
– If entering a parking space, the driver may be required to complete the manoeuvre. The gearbox changes to **P** 4 seconds after completion of the manoeuvre.
– When exiting a parking space, the gearbox changes to **N** when the manoeuvre is complete. A message and symbols prompt the driver to take back control of the vehicle.
The gearbox automatically changes to mode **P** if no action is taken by the driver within 30 seconds.

Operating limits

– The system may suggest an inappropriate parking space (parking prohibited, work in progress with damaged road surface, location alongside a ditch, etc.).
– The system may indicate that a space has been found but will not offer it because of a fixed obstacle on the opposite side of the manoeuvre, which does not allow the vehicle to follow the trajectory required for parking.
– The system may indicate that a space has been found but the manoeuvre will not be triggered because the width of the lane is insufficient.
– The system is not designed to perform parking manoeuvres on a steep slope or on a sharp curve.
– The system does not detect spaces that are much larger than the vehicle itself or that are delimited by obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs, etc.) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences, etc.).
– The system may be impaired by incorrect inflation of the vehicle's tyres.
– The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is heavily loaded can affect the distance measurements.

! Do not use the function under the following exterior conditions:
- Alongside a soft shoulder (ditch) or quay or on the edge of a drop.
- When the road surface is slippery (ice).

! Do not use the function in the presence of one of the following malfunctions:
- If a tyre is under-inflated.
- If one of the bumpers is damaged.
- If one of the cameras is faulty.
- If the brake lamps are not working.

! Do not use the function if the vehicle has been subject to one of the following modifications:
- When carrying an object extending beyond the dimensions of the vehicle (ladder on the roof bars, bicycle carrier on the tailgate, etc.).
- With a non-approved towball in place.
- With snow chains fitted.
- When driving on a small-diameter or "space-saver" type spare wheel.
- When the wheels fitted are a different size from the original ones.
- After modifying one or both bumpers (added protection).
- If the sensors have been repainted outside the dealer network.
- With sensors not approved for the vehicle.

Malfunctions

When the function is not activated, the temporary flashing of this indicator lamp and an audible signal indicate a DS PARK PILOT malfunction.
If the malfunction occurs while in use, the indicator lamp goes off.

If the parking sensor malfunction occurs during DS PARK PILOT use, indicated by one of these warning lamps coming on, the function is deactivated.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a power steering malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

! **You must stop the vehicle.**
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

BESPOKE LUBRICANTS FOR LUXURY CARS

For more than 50 years, TOTAL and DS AUTOMOBILES have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation.

It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted to the engines of DS vehicles, making them ever more fuel efficient and environmentally friendly.

Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants for servicing your vehicle; they are your assurance of optimum engine life and performance.

Compatibility of fuels

E5 E10

Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.

B7 B10 B20 B30

Diesel fuels conforming to the EN590, EN16734 and EN16709 standards and containing up to 7%, 10%, 20% and 30% fatty acid methyl ester respectively. The use of B20 or B30 fuels, even occasionally, imposes special maintenance conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel conforming to the EN15940 standard.

! The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (e.g. pure or diluted vegetable or animal oils, domestic fuel) is strictly prohibited - risk of damaging the engine and fuel system!

i The only fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 (petrol) or B715000 (Diesel) standards.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0 °C (+32 °F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could prevent the engine from operating correctly. In these temperature conditions, use winter-type Diesel fuel and keep the fuel tank more than 50 % full.
At temperatures below -15 °C (+5 °F) to avoid problems starting, it is best to park the vehicle under shelter (heated garage).

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For all additional information, consult a dealer.

Refuelling

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 55 litres (Diesel), 62 litres (Petrol) or 43 litres (Rechargeable hybrid).
Reserve level: approximately 6 litres.

Low fuel level

When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, **about 6 litres** of fuel remain.
Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by the message and the audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **0**.
You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.
For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

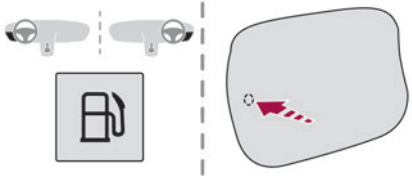
i A small arrow by the warning lamp indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located on.

! **Stop & Start**
Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

Refuelling

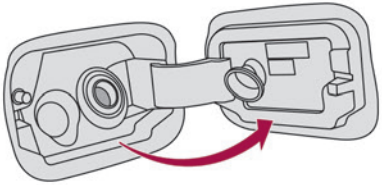
Any addition of fuel must be in quantities of at least 10 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.
Opening the filler flap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system.
To refuel in complete safety:

► **Always switch off the engine.**

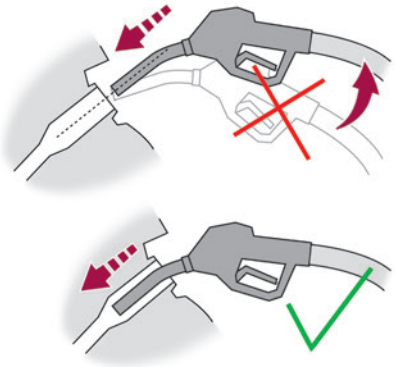


► To open the filler flap, press the flap opening button for more than 2 seconds or, with the vehicle unlocked, press the rear of the filler flap (depending on version).

Rechargeable hybrid vehicles
After pressing the button on the dashboard, the filler flap may not open for several minutes. A sound is emitted when the filler flap opens.
If the flap becomes stuck, press and hold the button on the dashboard for more than 3 seconds.



The filler cap is built into the flap.
► Select a pump that delivers the correct fuel type for the vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).



► Insert the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (to minimise the risk of splashing).
► Fill the tank.
Do not continue after the nozzle's third cut-out. Doing so may cause malfunctions.
► Push the fuel filler flap to close it.
The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.
For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.
The filler neck is narrower, allowing only unleaded petrol nozzles to be inserted.

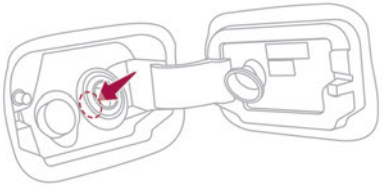
If you have put in the wrong fuel for the vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

Rechargeable hybrid vehicles
If the filler flap is accidentally closed before refuelling, it cannot be opened manually. Restart the engine and move the vehicle a few metres before pressing the filler flap opening button again.

Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on country of sale.)
This mechanical device prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device is visible when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of a Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.
Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

The misfuel prevention device does not prevent filling with a jerrycan, regardless of the fuel type.

Travelling abroad
As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.
Before travelling abroad, it is advisable to check with a dealer if the vehicle is suitable for the distribution equipment of the countries visited.

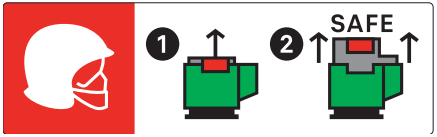
Rechargeable hybrid system

Electrical system

The electrical circuit of the rechargeable hybrid system is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:

The rechargeable hybrid powertrain uses a voltage of between 240 V and 400 V.
This system may be hot both when the ignition is on and after switching it off.
Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels, particularly inside the charging flap.

In the event of a problem
All work on or modifications to the vehicle's electrical system (including the traction battery, connectors, orange cables and other components visible from the interior or exterior) is strictly prohibited - risk of severe burns or potentially fatal electric shock (short-circuit/electrocution)!
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



This label is intended solely for use by firefighters and maintenance services in the event of any work on the vehicle.
No other person must touch the device shown on this label.

In the event of an accident or impact to the vehicle's underbody
In these situations, the electrical circuit or the traction battery can be seriously damaged.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of exposure to a fire
Immediately exit and evacuate all passengers from the vehicle. Never attempt to fight the fire yourself - risk of electrocution!
You must immediately contact the emergency services, informing them that the incident involves a rechargeable hybrid vehicle.

When washing
Before washing the vehicle, always check that the charging flap is closed correctly.
Never wash the vehicle while the battery is on charge.

High-pressure washing
To avoid damaging the electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing in the engine compartment or under the body.
Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

Never allow water or dust to enter the connector or charging nozzle - risk of electrocution or fire!
Never connect / disconnect the charging nozzle or cable with wet hands - risk of electrocution!

Traction battery

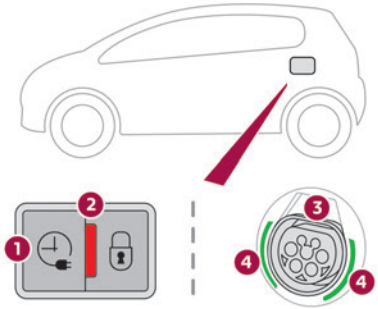
The Li-ion (Lithium-ion) traction battery stores the electrical energy needed to propel the vehicle.
It is located under the rear seats.
The traction battery's range varies depending on the type of driving, the route, the use of thermal comfort equipment and the ageing of its components.

i The traction battery ageing depends on several factors, such as climatic conditions and the distance travelled.

! **In the event of damage to the traction battery**
It is strictly prohibited to work on the vehicle yourself.
Do not touch liquids coming from the traction battery; in the event of contact between the skin and these products, wash abundantly with water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.

Charging flap

The charging flap is located on the rear left-hand side of the vehicle.



1. Deferred charging activation button
2. Indicator lamp confirming that the nozzle is locked into the charging connector.
   Fixed red: nozzle correctly positioned and locked.
   Flashing red: nozzle incorrectly positioned or locking not possible.
3. Charging connector
4. Light guides

Status of light guides	Meaning
Fixed white	Welcome lighting when flap is opened
Fixed blue	Deferred charging
Flashing green	Charging
Fixed green	Charging complete
Fixed red	Malfunction

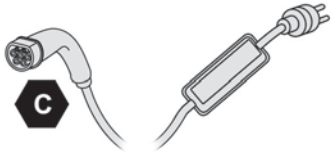
! In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it.
Do not dismantle or modify the charging connector - risk of electrocution and/or fire!
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Charging cables, sockets and chargers

The traction battery can be charged using several different types of cables.
The charging cables supplied with the vehicle are compatible with the electrical installations of the country of sale. If you are travelling abroad, refer to the following tables to check the compatibility of local electrical installations with the charging cables.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the appropriate charging cable(s).

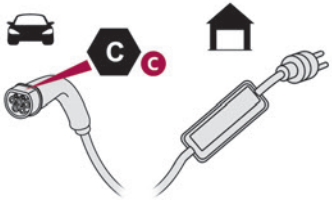
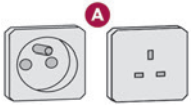
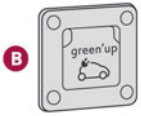
Identification labels on charging sockets/ connectors

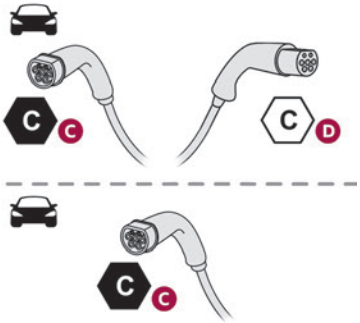
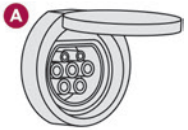
Identification labels are affixed to the vehicle, charging cable and charger to inform the user about which device needs to be used.
The meaning of each identification label is as follows:



Identification label	Location	Configuration	Power type/Voltage range
C	Charging connector (vehicle side)	TYPE 2	AC < 480 Vrms
C	Charging socket (charger side)	TYPE 2	AC < 480 Vrms

Types of charging

Cable type	Compatibility	Specifications
Mode 2 charging cable with integrated control unit  Identification label **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side).	Conventional electrical socket **A** (depending on country).  	Charge limited to a maximum of 8 A.
	"Green'Up" type socket **B**.  	Charge limited to a maximum of 16 A.

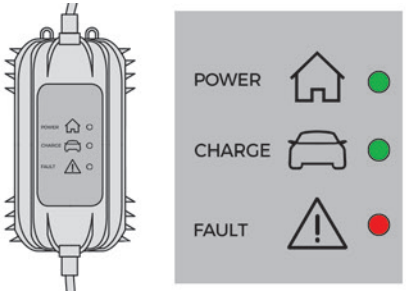
Cable type	Compatibility	Specifications
Mode 3 charging cable  Identification labels **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side) and **D** on the socket (charger side).	Accelerated charging unit socket **A**.  Wallbox accelerated charging unit **B**. 	Charge limited to a maximum of 32 A.

i The estimated charging time is indicated on the instrument panel when the vehicle is connected. It may vary depending on various factors such as the outside temperature or the quality of the electricity supply.
If the outside temperature is below -10°C, it is recommended to connect the vehicle as soon as possible as the charging time may increase significantly. The traction battery may not charge fully.

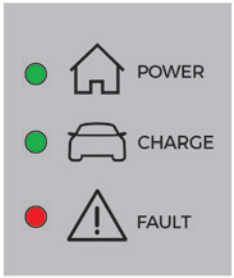
! **Domestic charging cable (mode 2)**
It is essential to avoid damaging the cable and to keep it intact.
In the event of damage, do not use it and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to replace it.

! **Accelerated charging unit (mode 3)**
Do not dismantle or modify the accelerated charging unit - risk of electrocution and/or fire!
To find out how it is used, please refer to the accelerated charging unit's user instructions.

Control unit (mode 2)



Type 1



Type 2

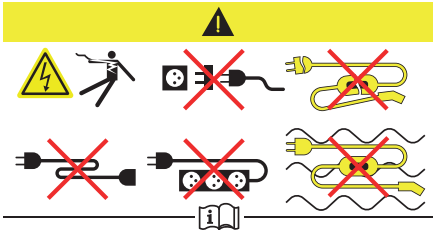
POWER
Green: electrical connection established; charging can begin.

CHARGE
Flashing green: charging in progress or temperature pre-conditioning activated.
Fixed green: charging complete.

FAULT
Red: fault; charging not permitted or must be stopped immediately. Check that everything is connected correctly and that the electrical system is not faulty.
If the indicator lamp does not go off, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Upon plugging the charging cable into a domestic socket, all of the indicator lamps come on briefly.
If no indicator lamps come on, check the domestic socket's circuit-breaker.

– If the circuit-breaker has tripped, contact a professional to check that your electricity supply is compatible and carry out any necessary repairs.
– If the circuit-breaker has not tripped, stop using the charging cable and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Type 1 control unit label - Recommendations



1. Refer to the handbook before use.
2. Incorrect use of this charging cable may result in fire, property damage and serious injury or death by electrocution!
3. Always use a correctly earthed power socket, protected by a 30 mA residual current device.
4. Always use an electrical socket protected by a circuit-breaker appropriate for the electrical circuit's current rating.
5. The weight of the control unit must not be borne by the electrical socket, plug and cables.
6. Never use this charging cable if it is defective or in any way damaged.
7. Never attempt to repair or open this charging cable. It contains no repairable parts - replace the charging cable if it is damaged.
8. Never immerse this charging cable in water.
9. Never use this charging cable with an extension cable, a multi-plug socket, a conversion adaptor or on a damaged electrical socket.
10. Do not unplug the plug from the wall as a means of stopping charging.
11. Do not force the connector if it is locked into the vehicle.
12. Immediately stop charging, by locking and then unlocking the vehicle using the remote control key, if the charging cable or wall socket feel burning hot to the touch.
13. This charging cable includes components liable to cause electrical arcing or sparks. Do not expose to flammable vapours.
14. Only use this charging cable with DS AUTOMOBILES vehicles.
15. Never plug the cable into the wall socket (or unplug it) with wet hands.

Type 2 control unit label - State of indicator lamps

	State of the indicator lamp
Off	○

	State of the indicator lamp
On	

	State of the indicator lamp
Flashing	

POWER	CHARGE	FAULT	Symbol	Description
				Not connected to the power supply or power is not available from the infrastructure.
(green)	(green)	(red)		The control unit is currently performing a self-test.
(green)				Connected only to the infrastructure or to the infrastructure and to the Electric Vehicle (EV) but no charging in progress.
(green)	(green)			Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is on charge or in a temperature pre-conditioning sequence.
(green)	(green)		100%	Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is waiting for charging or the charging of the EV is completed.

POWER	CHARGE	FAULT	Symbol	Description
		(red)		Control unit malfunction. No charging allowed. If an error indicator reappears after a manual reset, the control unit must be checked by a dealer before the next charge.
(green)	(green)	(red)		The control unit is in diagnostic mode.

Manual reset procedure

The control unit can be reset by simultaneously disconnecting the charging connector and the wall socket. Then, reconnect the wall socket first. For more information, refer to the handbook.

Type 2 control unit label - Recommendations

Refer to the handbook before use.

1. Incorrect use of this charging cable may result in fire, property damage and serious injury or death by electrocution!
2. Always use a correctly earthed power socket, protected by a 30 mA residual current device.
3. Always use an electrical socket protected by a circuit-breaker appropriate for the electrical circuit's current rating.
4. The weight of the control unit must not be borne by the electrical socket, plug and cables.
5. Never use this charging cable if it is defective or in any way damaged.
6. Never attempt to repair or open this charging cable. It contains no repairable parts - replace the charging cable if it is damaged.
7. Never immerse this charging cable in water.
8. Never use this charging cable with an extension cable, a multi-plug socket, a conversion adaptor or on a damaged electrical socket.
9. Do not unplug the plug from the wall as a means of stopping charging.
10. Immediately stop charging, by locking and then unlocking the vehicle using the remote control key, if the charging cable or wall socket feel burning hot to the touch.
11. This charging cable includes components liable to cause electrical arcing or sparks. Do not expose to flammable vapours.
12. Only use this charging cable with DS AUTOMOBILES vehicles.
13. Never plug the cable into the wall socket (or unplug it) with wet hands.
14. Do not force the connector if it is locked into the vehicle.

Charging the traction battery (Rechargeable hybrid)

For a full charge, follow the charging procedure without interrupting it, until it stops automatically. Charging may be performed either immediately (by default) or deferred.

Deferred charging is set via the touch screen or the **MyDS App** application.

When the vehicle is connected, the following information is displayed on the instrument panel:

- Status of the battery (%).
- Remaining range (miles or km).
- Estimated charging time (calculation may take a few seconds).
- Charging speed (kW/h).

After the instrument panel has been put into standby mode, this information can be displayed again by unlocking the vehicle or opening a door.

i It is also possible to monitor the charging progress using the **MyDS App** application. For more information on **Remote functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

i **Lounge mode**
When the vehicle is connected, it is possible to switch on the ignition and use certain functions such as the audio and telematics system and the air conditioning system for several hours.

i **Vehicle immobilised for 1 to 12 months**
Discharge the traction battery down to 2 or 3 bars on the charge level indicator on the instrument panel.
Do not connect the charging cable.
Always park the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and 30°C (parking in a place with extreme temperatures can damage the traction battery).
Refer to the **Accessory battery (Rechargeable hybrid)** section for the battery disconnection procedure.

Precautions

Rechargeable hybrid vehicles have been developed in accordance with the recommendations for maximum electromagnetic field limits established by the ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection - 1998 Guidelines).

Wearers of pacemakers or equivalent devices should consult a doctor to enquire about any applicable precautionary measures, or contact the manufacturer of their implanted electronic medical device to check that it is guaranteed to operate in an environment compliant with the ICNIRP guidelines.

If in doubt, during charging, do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or the charging unit, even for a short time.

! **Before charging**
Depending on the context:

► Have a professional check that the electrical system to be used complies with applicable standards and is compatible with the vehicle.

► Have a professional electrician install a dedicated domestic power socket or accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) compatible with the vehicle.

Use the charging cable supplied with the vehicle.

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! **(During charging)**
As a safety measure, the engine will not start if the charging cable is plugged into the connector on the vehicle. A warning is displayed on the instrument panel.
While charging is in progress, unlocking the vehicle will cause the charging to stop.
If no action is taken on one of the openings (door or boot) or on the charging nozzle, the vehicle will lock again after 30 seconds and charging will resume automatically.
Never work under the bonnet:

- Some areas remain very hot, even an hour after charging ends - risk of burns!
- The fan may start at any time - risk of cuts or strangulation!

! **After charging**
Check that the charging flap is closed.

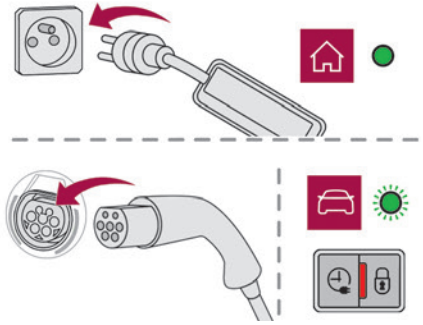
Do not leave the cable connected to the domestic power socket - risk of short-circuit or electrocution in the event of contact with or immersion in water!

Charging procedure

Connection

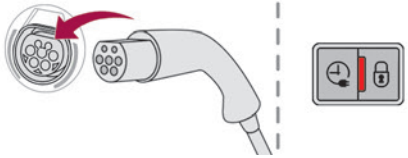
► Before charging, check that the gear selector is in mode **P** and the ignition is off, otherwise charging is impossible.
► Press on the rear of the charging flap to open it and check that there are no foreign bodies on the vehicle's charging connector.
The light guides in the flap come on white.

Domestic charging (mode 2)



► First, connect the charging cable from the control unit to the domestic socket.
When the connection is made, all of the indicator lamps on the control unit light up, then only the **POWER** indicator lamp remains on in green.
► Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
► Insert the nozzle into the vehicle's charging connector.
The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing of the green light guides in the flap and the flashing of the **CHARGE** indicator lamp in green on the control unit.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that all of the connections are properly established.
The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Accelerated charging (mode 3)



► Follow the accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) user instructions.
► Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
► Insert the nozzle into the vehicle's charging connector.
The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing of the green light guides in the flap.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure ensuring that all connections are properly established.
The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Disconnection

Before disconnecting the nozzle from the charging connector:
► If the vehicle is locked, unlock it.
► If the vehicle is unlocked, **lock it and then unlock it**.

i If selective unlocking of the doors is activated, press the unlocking button on the remote control twice to disconnect the nozzle.

The red indicator lamp in the flap goes out to confirm that the nozzle is unlocked.
► Within **30 seconds**, remove the charging nozzle.

Domestic charging (mode 2)

The end of charging is confirmed when the green **CHARGE** indicator lamp on the control unit comes on fixed and the green light guides in the flap come on fixed.

► After disconnection, replace the protective cover over the nozzle and close the charging flap.
► Disconnect the control unit's charging cable from the domestic socket.

Accelerated charging (mode 3)

The end of charging is confirmed by the accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) and when the green light guides in the flap come on fixed.
► After disconnection, replace the nozzle on to the charging unit and close the charging flap.

Deferred charging

Settings

With NAVIGATION

► In the **Energy** touch screen menu, select the **Charge** page.
► Set the charging start time.
► Press **OK**.
The setting is saved in the system.

With DS CONNECT RADIO or NAVIGATION

You can also programme the deferred charging function at any time from a smartphone via the **MyDS App** application.
For more information on **Remote functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

Activation

► Connect the vehicle to the desired charging equipment.
► Press this button in the flap within one minute to activate deferred charging (confirmed by the light guides coming on in blue).

Towing device

Load distribution

► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.
Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towable load must be reduced by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude.

i Use genuine towing devices and wiring harnesses approved by the Manufacturer. We recommend having them fitted by a dealer or a qualified workshop.
If not fitted by a dealer, they must still be fitted in accordance with the Manufacturer's instructions.
Important: if the vehicle has a motorised tailgate and Hands-Free Tailgate Access function, and a towing device has been fitted outside the dealer network, it is essential to visit a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the detection system recalibrated - risk of malfunction of the Hands-Free Tailgate Access function.
Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically deactivated while an approved towing system is in use.
For more information about driving with a towing device fitted to a trailer and associated with the **Trailer stability assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Comply with the maximum authorised towable weight, as indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, on the manufacturer's label and in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

! If using accessories attached to the towing device (e.g. bicycle carriers, tow boxes):
– Comply with the maximum authorised nose weight.
– Do not transport more than 4 conventional bicycles or 2 electric bicycles.
When loading bicycles onto a bicycle carrier on a towball, be sure to place the heaviest bicycles as close as possible to the vehicle.

! Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

! **Vehicle equipped with motorised tailgate with hands-free function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access)**
To avoid unintentionally opening the motorised tailgate when operating the towing device:
– Deactivate this function in advance in the vehicle's configuration menu.
– Or remove the electronic key from the recognition zone, with the tailgate closed.

Rechargeable hybrid vehicles
A rechargeable hybrid vehicle with 20" wheels (R20) cannot be fitted with a towing device.
It is therefore not possible to tow a trailer or caravan.

Towing device with retractable ball joint

When this towing device is not in use, it is folded away underneath the rear bumper.
No tools are required to install or stow it.

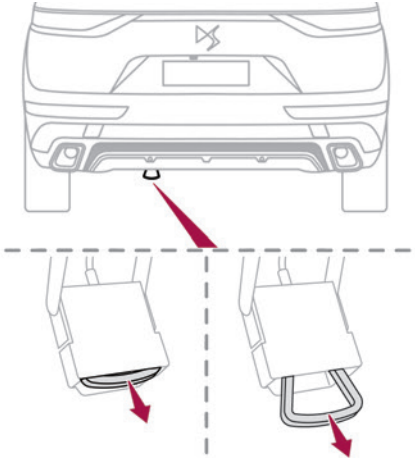
Before any operation, the vehicle must be stationary with the parking brake applied.
The area close to the exhaust pipe may reach a high temperature: risk of burns!

Vehicle equipped with motorised tailgate with "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function
To avoid unintentional opening of the tailgate, follow the recommendations on the **Towing device** by referring to the corresponding section.

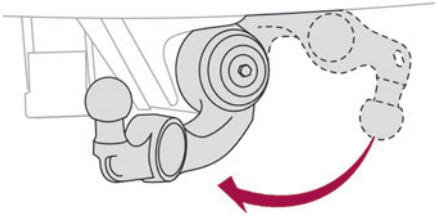
Unlocking handle

The towball is locked in either the storage position or the usage position.

The unlocking handle is behind the rear bumper, protected by a storage case.
To reach the handle:



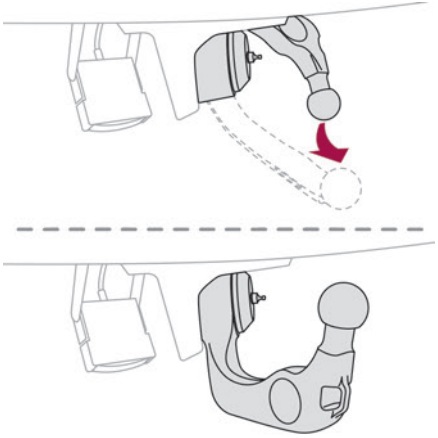
► Pass your hand flat under the rear bumper with the palm facing upwards.
► Insert your hand into the storage case and grasp the handle.
To unlock the towball:
► Pull the handle firmly downwards to release it.



The towball hangs, hooked onto its shaft.
As soon as you release the handle, it is engaged automatically in its storage case.

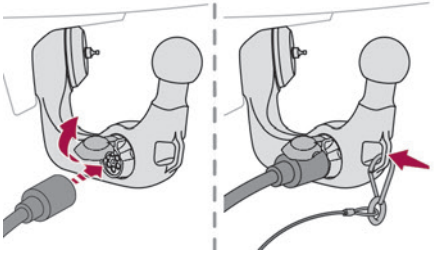
Usage position

Towball unlocked:



► Grasp the towball and rotate it while raising it until it locks into place, in the vertical position.

! The towball must be folded away when using a high-pressure washer.
Do not direct the jet from less than 30 cm from the towing system.

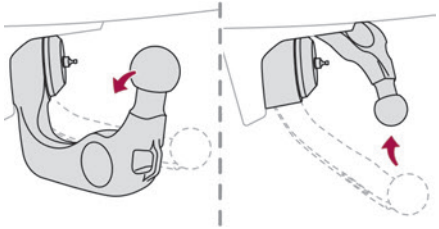


► Raise the electrical socket cover and connect the plug for the trailer or carrying device.
► Attach the trailer's safety cable to the ring in the towball elbow.

Storage position

! When the towing system is not in use, it is recommended to fold the towball away.
In the event of a rear-end collision, damage to the vehicle could be worse with the towball in place.

Towball unlocked and socket disconnected:



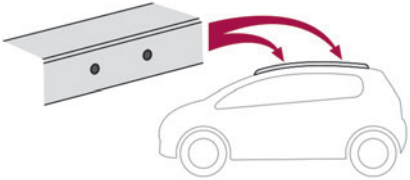
► Grasp the towball and rotate it until it locks into place, in the horizontal position.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for any work on the towing system.

Roof bars

! As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use transverse roof bars approved for your vehicle. Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

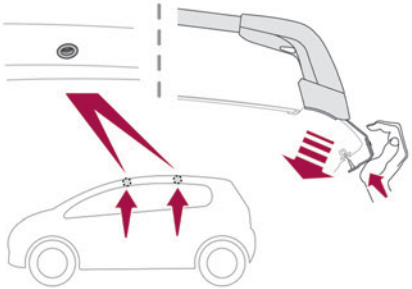
! Maximum load distributed over the transverse roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carrier): **80 kg**.
As this value may change, please verify the maximum load quoted in the guide supplied with the roof bars.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

Fitting on longitudinal bars



The transverse bars must be fixed at the markings located on the longitudinal bars.

Fitting directly to the roof



You must only attach the transverse bars to the four fixing points located on the roof frame. These

points are concealed by the vehicle doors when the doors are closed.
The roof bar fixings have a stud which must be inserted into the opening of each fixing point.

Recommendations
Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

Very cold climate screens

(Depending on country of sale)
This removable device prevents the accumulation of snow around the radiator cooling fan.
It consists of a first element for the upper part of the front grille and a second element for the lower part.

In case of difficulty with installation/ removal
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Before any operation, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped.

It is essential to remove them when:
- the outside temperature exceeds 10°C.
- recovery is in progress.
- the speed is above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Observe the legislation in force in your country relating to the use of snow chains and maximum authorised speeds.

Only use chains that have been designed for the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size
215/65 R17	9 mm
225/55 R18	9 mm
205/55 R19	9 mm
235/50 R19	Cannot be fitted with chains
235/45 R20	Cannot be fitted with chains

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

► To fit the snow chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface at the side of the road.
► Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.
► Fit the snow chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
► Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
► Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

It is strongly recommended that you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface before setting off.

Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy

wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

! **Rechargeable hybrid vehicles**
The use of snow chains is only authorised on the **front wheels**.
The driving mode selector must be on the **4WD** position (depending on version).

Energy economy mode

This system manages the duration of use of certain functions, in order to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery with the ignition off.
After switching off the engine and for a maximum cumulative period of around 30 minutes, you can continue to use functions such as the audio and telematics system, dipped beam headlamps or courtesy lamps.

Selecting the mode

A confirmation message is displayed when energy economy mode is entered, and the active functions are placed on standby.

i If a telephone call is in progress at the time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes via the audio system's hands-free system.

Exiting the mode

These functions are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.
To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:
– For less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes.
– For more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.
Let the engine run for the specified duration to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
To recharge the battery, avoid repeatedly or continuously restarting the engine.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Load reduction mode

This system manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Bonnet

! **Stop & Start**
Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of the engine restarting automatically.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!

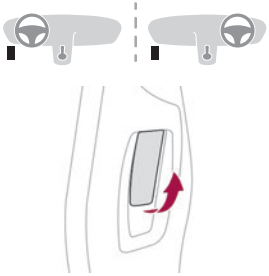
! **Rechargeable hybrid vehicles**
Before any work is carried out under the bonnet, it is essential to switch off the ignition and disconnect the charging connector nozzle if it is connected, check that the **READY** indicator lamp is off on the instrument panel and wait 4 minutes - risk of serious injury!

i The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents the bonnet being opened when the left-hand front door is closed.

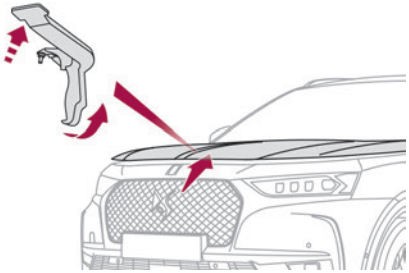
! When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

! **Cooling of the engine when stopped**
The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

Opening



► **From the inside:** pull the control lever, located on the left below the dashboard, towards you.



► **From the outside:** lift the safety catch and raise the bonnet.
A bonnet strut opens the bonnet and holds it open.

Closing

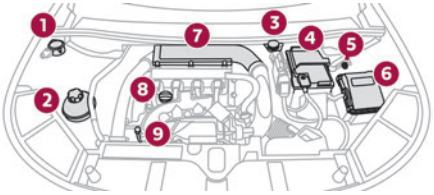
► Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
► Check the locking.

! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

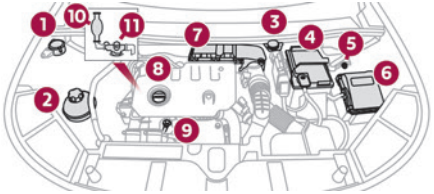
Engine compartment

The engine shown here is an example for illustrative purposes only.
The locations of the following components may vary:
- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.
- Priming pump.
- Degassing screw.

Petrol engine



Diesel engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery/Fuses
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. Air filter
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Engine oil dipstick

10. Priming pump*
11. Degassing screw*

Diesel fuel system
This system is under very high pressure. All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking levels

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a dealer or a qualified workshop.

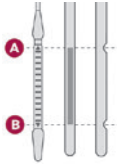
Engine oil

The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick.
It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking using the dipstick

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.
► Grasp the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
► Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.



► Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A** (max) and **B (min).**
Do not start the engine if the level is:
– above mark **A**: contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
– below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

Oil grade
Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your dealer or qualified workshop).

* Depending on engine.

Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.

Topping up the engine oil level

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding engine compartment illustration.

► Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).

► Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.

► Top up the level if necessary.

► After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and replace the dipstick in its tube.

i The oil level indication displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid for 30 minutes following an addition of oil.

Brake fluid

The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. If not, check the brake pads for wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

! Clean the cap before removing it to refill. Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

Engine coolant

It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A level of coolant that is too low risks causing major damage to the engine; the coolant level must be close to the "**MAX**" mark without ever going above it.

If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top it up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

As the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

In order to avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

Screenwash fluid

Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

! Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive (Diesel with particle filter)

On reaching the minimum level in the particle filter additive tank, this warning lamp comes on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message.

Topping up

The topping up of this additive must be carried out quickly.

Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

An alert is triggered when the reserve level is reached.

For more information on the **Indicators** and in particular the AdBlue range indicators, refer to the corresponding section.

To avoid the vehicle being immobilised in accordance with regulations, you must top up the AdBlue tank.

For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi)**, and in particular the supply of AdBlue, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Only use products recommended by the Manufacturer or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, the Manufacturer selects and offers very specific products.

12 V battery

The battery does not require any maintenance.
Check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick-release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

i For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification.
Its replacement should be carried out only by a dealer or by a qualified workshop.

Passenger compartment filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

i A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Air filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

Oil filter

Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)

The start of clogging of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an alert message.
As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

i If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

i Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice water vapour coming from the exhaust while accelerating. These emissions have no impact on the vehicle's behaviour and the environment.

i **New vehicle**
During the first few particle filter regeneration operations, you may notice a "burning" smell. This is perfectly normal.

Automatic gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Electric parking brake

This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

i For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Brake pads

Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to

have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.
Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

i After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

Brake disc wear

For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Wheels and tyres

The inflation pressure of all tyres, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tyres.
The pressures indicated on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

! Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressures cause tyres to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. Regularly check the condition of the tyres (tread and sidewalls) and rims as well as the presence of the valve caps.
When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; replace the tyres as soon as possible.
Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.
Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.
Always mark the direction of rotation on the tyres that will be stored when fitting winter or summer tyres. Store them in a cool, dry place and away from direct exposure to the sun's rays.

M+S Winter or 4-seasons tyres can be identified by this symbol on their sidewalls.

Shock absorbers

It is not easy for drivers to detect when shock absorbers are worn. Nevertheless, the shock absorbers have a major impact on road holding and braking performance.
For your safety and driving comfort, it is important to have them regularly checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Timing and accessory kits

The timing and accessory kits are used from the time the engine is started until it is switched off. It is normal for them to wear over time.
A faulty timing or accessory kit can damage the engine, rendering it unusable. Observe the recommended replacement frequency, stated in distance travelled or time elapsed, whichever is reached first.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of its Diesel engines, the Manufacturer has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that combines SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel Particle Filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.

The AdBlue® is contained in **a special tank** holding about 17 litres.

Its capacity allows a driving range of approximately 3,900 miles (6,500 km), **which may vary considerably** depending on your driving style. An alert system is triggered once the reserve level is reached: it is then possible to drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty and the vehicle is immobilised.

i For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, please refer to the corresponding sections.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a device required by law prevents the engine from being restarted.
If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from the vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard and the vehicle starts polluting the environment.
In the event of a confirmed SCR system malfunction, it is essential to visit a dealer or a qualified workshop. After 660 miles (1,100 km), a device is automatically activated to prevent the engine from starting.
In both cases, a range indicator indicates the distance that can be travelled before the vehicle is stopped.

i **Freezing of the AdBlue®**
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.

The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

It is recommended that the AdBlue® be topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

! For the correct operation of the SCR system:
- Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
- Never transfer AdBlue® to another container as it would lose its purity.
- Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a dealer or a qualified workshop, as well as service stations equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above +25°C. Containers should be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.
If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out at room temperature.

! Never store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This fluid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. Seek medical attention if you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapours have an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Store AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.

Procedure

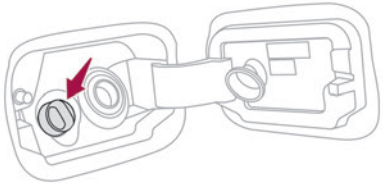
Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.
In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into the tank. Park the vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

! Never pour the AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the bodywork, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after an AdBlue** breakdown, you must wait about 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle or bringing the electronic key into the passenger compartment.**
Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

► Press the "**START/STOP**" button to switch off the engine.



► Turn the blue cap of the AdBlue® tank anti-clockwise and remove it.
► With a container of AdBlue®: after checking the expiry date, read the instructions on the label carefully before pouring the contents of the container into the vehicle's AdBlue tank.
► With an AdBlue® pump: insert the nozzle and fill the tank until the nozzle automatically cuts out.

! In order not to overfill the AdBlue® tank:
– Add between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.
– Stop after the nozzle's first automatic cut-out, if you are refilling at a service station.
The system only registers AdBlue® top-ups of 5 litres or more.

! If the AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the message "**Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible**" – it is essential to add at least 5 litres.

Free-wheeling

In certain situations, it is necessary to put the vehicle into free-wheeling mode (e.g. towing, on a rolling road, automatic car wash (Wash mode), rail or sea transport).
The procedure varies according to the type of gearbox and parking brake.

Release procedure

► With the vehicle stationary and the engine running, select mode **N** and switch off the ignition.
Within 5 seconds:
► Switch on the ignition again.
► While depressing the brake pedal, move the push selector forwards or backwards to confirm mode **N**.
► While depressing the brake pedal, press the control to release the parking brake.
► Release the brake pedal, switch off the ignition.
If the 5-second time limit is exceeded, the gearbox engages mode **P**; it is then necessary to restart the procedure.

Reverting to normal operation

► While depressing the brake pedal, restart the engine.

i **Keyless Entry and Start**
You must not depress the brake pedal while switching the ignition on again, then switching it off. If you do, the engine will start, requiring you to restart the procedure.

Advice on care and maintenance

General recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Exterior

! Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components!
Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

i When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, move the electronic key away and deactivate the "hands-free" function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access).
When using a pressure washer, keep the jet nozzle at a minimum distance of 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals).
Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paintwork (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).
Depending on the environment, clean the vehicle frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud/salts (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).
Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior

! When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console. Be vigilant!
To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

Bodywork

High-gloss paint

! Do not use abrasive products, solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.
Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains - risk of scratching the paintwork!
Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

i Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.
Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.
Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals

(Depending on version)

! Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

i Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25°C and 40°C).
Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned.
Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Leather

Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care is essential for its durability.
It must be protected and nourished using a specific leather product, to keep it supple and preserve its original appearance.

! Do not clean leather using unsuitable cleaning agents such as solvents, detergents, petrol or pure alcohol.
When cleaning items partly made from leather, take care not to damage the other materials with the specific leather product.

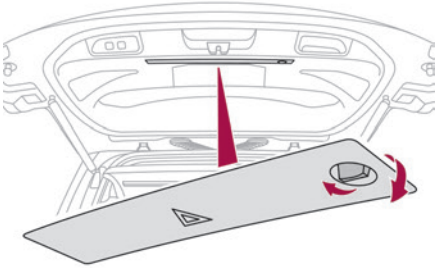
i Before cleaning greasy stains or liquids, quickly mop up any surplus.
Before cleaning, wipe off any residues liable to scuff the leather, using a cloth that has been dampened with demineralised water and thoroughly wrung out.
Clean leather using a soft cloth moistened with soapy water or a pH-neutral product.
Dry with a soft, dry cloth.

Warning triangle

This reflective and dismantlable device is to be installed on the side of the road when a vehicle is broken down or damaged.

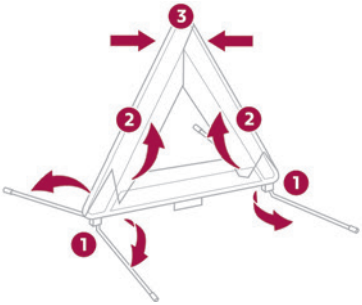
! **Before getting out of the vehicle**
Turn on the hazard warning lamps, then put on the safety vest to assemble and install the triangle.

Storage compartment



There is a compartment in the interior trim of the tailgate to store a warning triangle.
► After opening the tailgate, release the cover by turning the screw a quarter turn to the left.

Assembling and placing the triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above.
For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.
► Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

With Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.
Before starting to prime the system, it is essential to put at least 5 litres of Diesel into the fuel tank.

i For more information on **Refuelling** and on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

For non-BlueHDi versions, the fuel system components are located in the engine compartment; this may be under a removable cover.

i For more information on the **Engine compartment**, in particular the location of these components under the bonnet, refer to the corresponding section.

BlueHDi engines

► Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
► Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
► Operate the starter motor to start the engine. If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

Non-BlueHDi engines

► Open the bonnet and then, if necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.
► Loosen the degassing bolt.

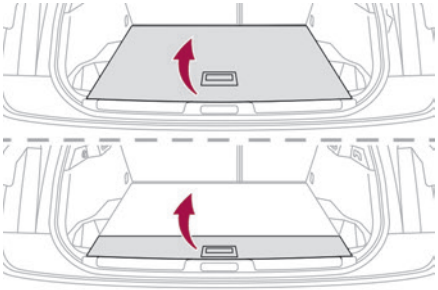
► Operate the priming pump until fuel appears in the transparent tube.
► Retighten the degassing bolt.
► Operate the starter motor until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
► If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter motor.

► Put the cover back in place and clip it in, then close the bonnet.

Tool kit

Set of tools supplied with the vehicle.
Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:
- Temporary puncture repair kit.
- Spare wheel.

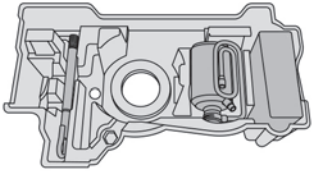
Accessing the tools



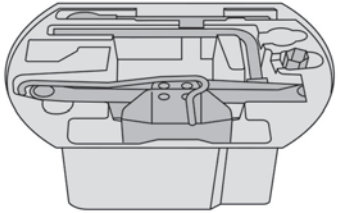
The tool kit is stored in the boot, under the floor.
To access it:
Versions with 2-position boot floor:
► Open the boot.
► Place the adjustable boot floor in the high position.
► Lift the boot floor past the two retractable stops.
► Place the boot floor onto these two stops to hold it up.

Versions with articulated boot mat (Rechargeable hybrid):
► Open the boot.
► Unfold the articulated boot mat by pulling its handle until it is fully opened.

With temporary puncture repair kit



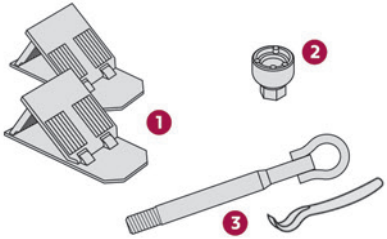
With spare wheel



! These tools are specific to the vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment.
Do not use them for any other purpose.

! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with the vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the one that was intended by the manufacturer.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

List of tools

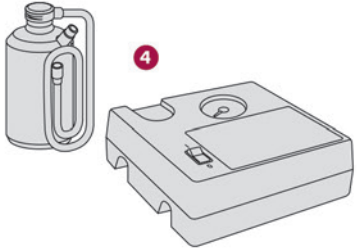


1. Chocks to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment)

2. Socket for the wheel security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment)
   To adapt the wheelbrace to the special 'security' bolts.
3. Removable towing eye and tool to open the rear protective cover

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

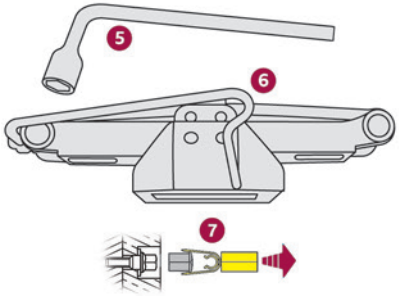
With temporary puncture repair kit



4. 12 V compressor with cartridge of sealant and speed limit sticker
   For temporary repair of a tyre and to adjust the tyre pressure.

For more information about the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace
   For removing the wheel bolts.
6. Jack with integrated handle
   To raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cap removal tool (depending on equipment)
   For removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

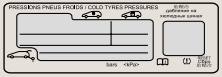
Temporary puncture repair kit

> Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tyre tread.

> The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor to the 12 V power supply for long enough to repair a tyre after a puncture.

> Tyre inflation pressures are indicated on this label.
> For more information on **Identification markings**, particularly this label, refer to the corresponding section.



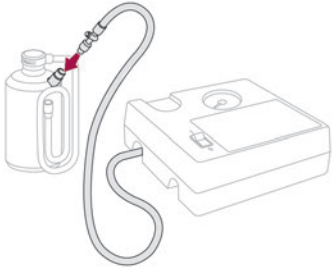
> For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Repair procedure

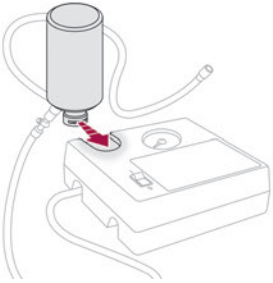
> Do not remove any foreign bodies (e.g. nail, screw) which have penetrated into the tyre.

► Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.

► Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, high visibility jacket, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
► Switch the ignition off.
► Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.

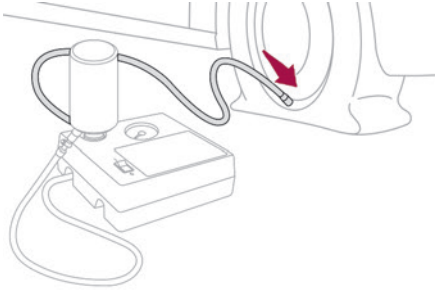


► Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.



► Turn the bottle of sealant over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.

► Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean place.

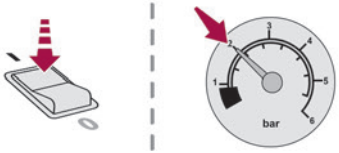


► Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
► Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".
► Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
► Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

► Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be affixed inside the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind them that a wheel is in temporary use.

► Switch the ignition on.



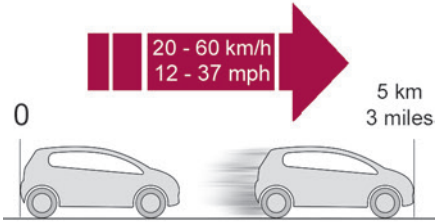
► Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position "**I**" until the tyre pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

! If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

► Move the switch to position "**O**".
► Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
► Remove the kit.
► Refit the cap on the valve.
► Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

! The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.

After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment; take it to a dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a dealer or a qualified workshop.



► Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.
► Stop to check the repair **and the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! With a tyre repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 50 miles (80 km).
You must contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the repair checked and the tyre changed.

Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

The compressor can be used, **without injecting sealant**, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.
► Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
► Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
► Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
► Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".
► Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
► Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
► Switch the ignition on.
► Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "**I**" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label.
To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

! If after 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, the tyre is damaged; contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

► Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "**O**".
► Remove the kit and stow it.
► Refit the cap on the valve.

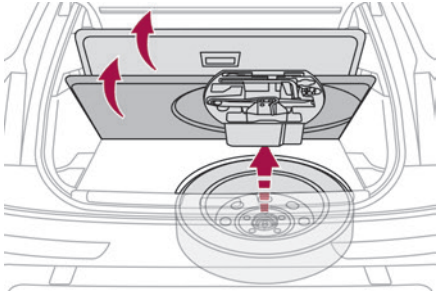
! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

i Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

i For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

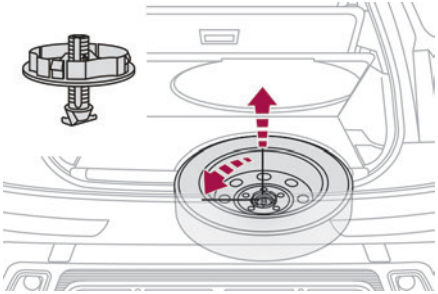
Accessing the spare wheel



The spare wheel is stored in the boot, under the floor.
To access the spare wheel, first refer to the **Tool kit** section.

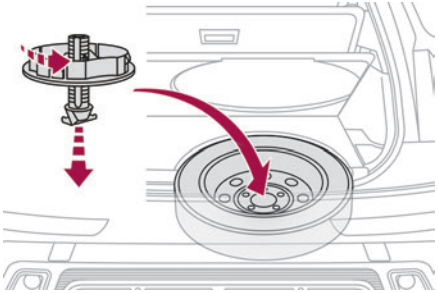
i Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard size steel or alloy wheel.
In some countries, it is a 'space saver' wheel.

Removing the spare wheel



► Slacken the central nut.
► Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
► Lift the spare wheel towards the back of the boot.
► Take the wheel out of the boot.

Putting the spare wheel back in place

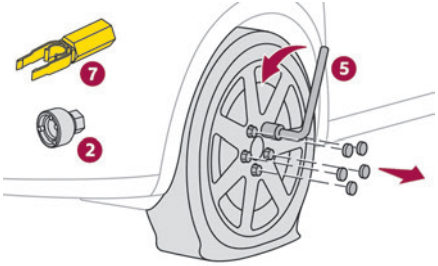


► Put the spare wheel back in place in its housing.
► Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
► Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
► Tighten the central nut sufficiently to retain the wheel correctly.
► Put the tool box back in place in the middle of the wheel and clip it in place.

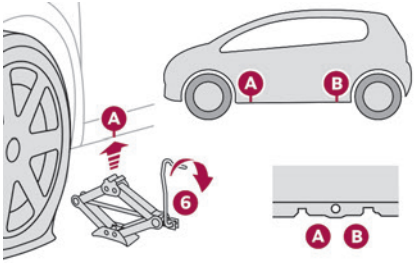
Removing a wheel

! **Parking the vehicle**
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
With an automatic gearbox, select mode **P** to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.
Check that the parking brake indicator lamps on the instrument panel are on fixed.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

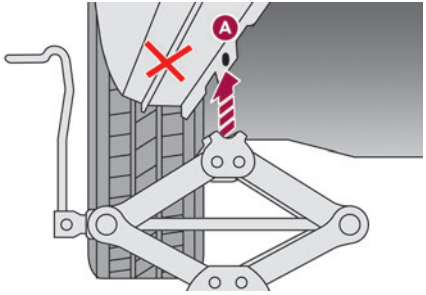
i **Wheel with wheel trim**
When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.



► To remove the wheel bolt cover on each of the bolts, use tool **7** (alloy wheels).
► Fit security socket **2** on wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt.
► Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.

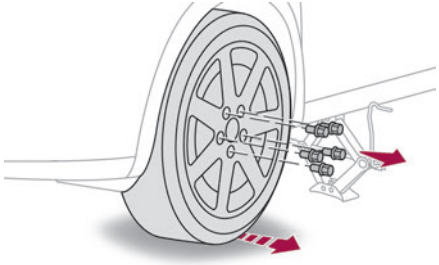


► Place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



► Extend jack **6** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**; contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
► Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to easily admit the spare (not punctured) wheel.

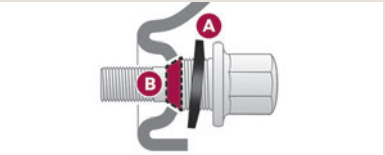
! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse - risk of injury!
Take care to position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area on the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing - risk of injury!



► Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
► Remove the wheel.

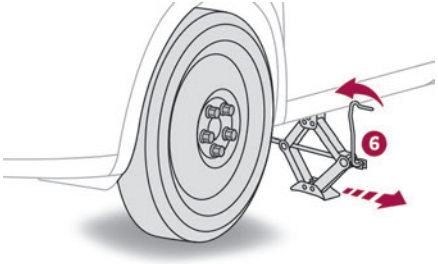
Fitting a wheel

Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel

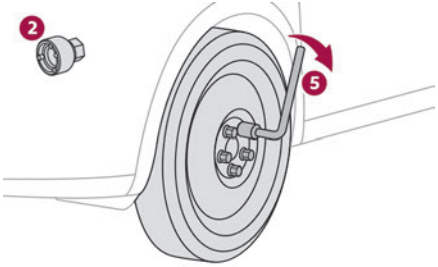


If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the washers **A** do not make contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is held in place by the conical contact surface **B** of each bolt.

► Fit the wheel on the hub.
► Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
► Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
► Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.



► Lower the vehicle again fully.
► Fold jack **6** and remove it.



► Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
► Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
► Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
► Store the tools.

After changing a wheel

Store the punctured wheel in the boot or, depending on version, remove the central cover first to store it beneath the floor in place of the spare wheel.

! **With a "space-saver" type spare wheel**

Deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control, etc.).
Do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) or the maximum distance of 50 miles (80 km).
Driving with more than one "space-saver" type spare wheel is prohibited.

! Visit a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Have the tightening of the spare wheel's bolts and its tyre pressure checked.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Changing a bulb

i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

! Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!

! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
– **Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products.**
– Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
– When using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the headlamps, lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

! Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the headlamp / lamp has been switched off for several minutes - risk of serious burns!
Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers; use a lint-free cloth.
It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification. To avoid lighting imbalance, replace the bulbs in pairs.

! **After changing a bulb**
To refit, carry out the operations in reverse order to removal.
Close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the sealing of the lamps.

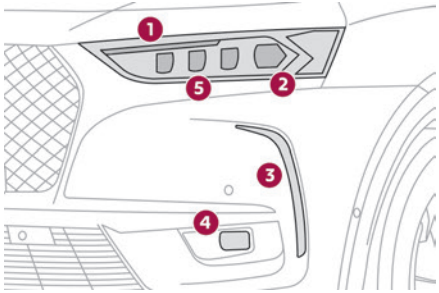
Light-emitting diode (LED) headlamps and lamps

Depending on version, the affected types of headlamps/lamps are:
- Full LED technology headlamps.
- Front foglamps.
- Offset daytime running lamps.
- Direction indicator side repeaters.
- Side spotlamps.
- Tailgate rear lamps.
- Third brake lamp.
- Number plate lamps.

! If you need to replace this type of bulb, you must contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not touch the "Full LED" technology headlamps or lamps - risk of electrocution!

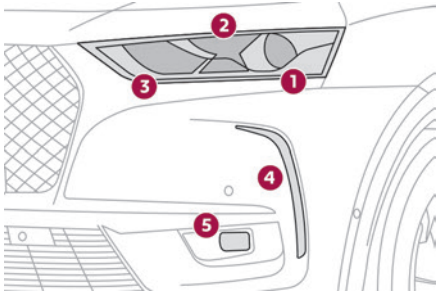
Front lamps

Model with "Full LED" technology headlamps



1. Direction indicators (LED)
2. Dipped / main beam headlamps (LED)
3. Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LED)
4. Foglamps (LED)
5. Additional lamps (LED)

Model with halogen and Xenon headlamps



1. Dipped beam / main beam headlamps (D5S 25W)
2. Direction indicators (PY21W).
3. Additional main beam headlamps (H7)
4. Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LED)
5. Foglamps (LED)

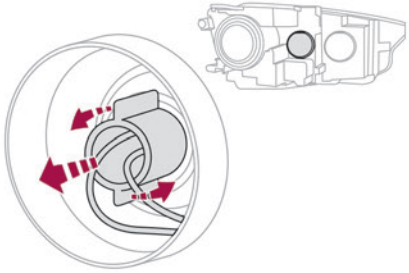
! **Opening the bonnet/Accessing the bulbs**
Proceed with caution when the engine is hot - risk of burns!
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan - risk of strangulation!

! **Risk of electrocution**
Xenon bulbs (D5S) must be replaced by a dealer or by a qualified workshop.

Halogen bulbs (Hx)
To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

Direction indicators

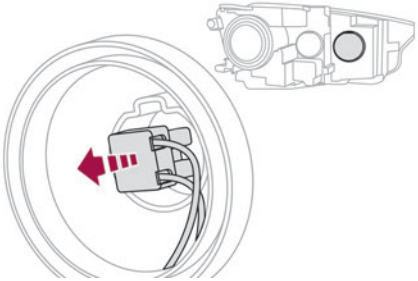
Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.



► Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
► Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise.
► Pull the bulb and bulb holder assembly backwards.
► Replace the bulb.

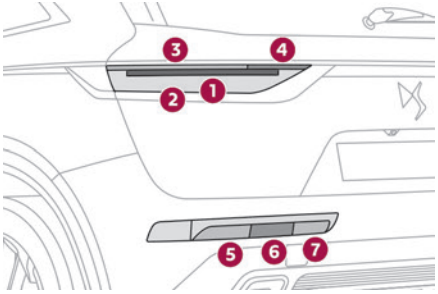
Amber coloured bulbs must be replaced by bulbs with identical specifications and colour.

Additional main beam headlamps



► Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
► Pull the connector backward: the bulb is detached from the reflector.
► Disconnect the connector.
► Replace the bulb.

Rear lamps



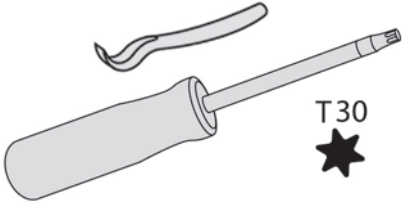
Main lamps

1. Brake lamps (LED)
2. Sidelamps (LED)
3. Direction indicators (LED)
4. Reversing lamps (LED)

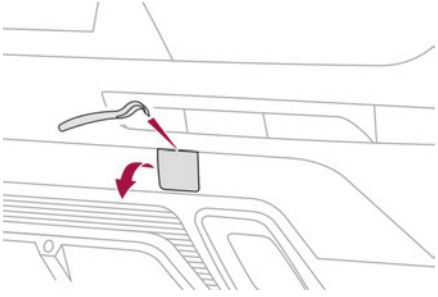
Secondary lamp cluster

5. Brake lamps / sidelamps reminder (P21/5W)
6. Direction indicators reminder (PY21W)
7. Foglamps (W16W)

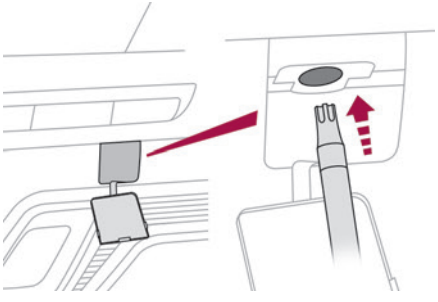
Access to the secondary lamp cluster



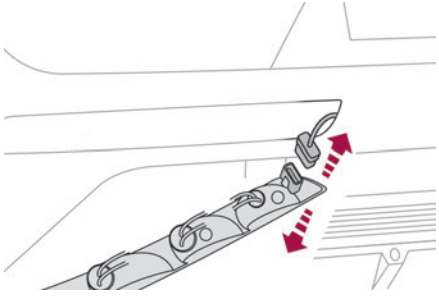
Tools required: rear protective cover opening tool (tool kit) and Torx T30 screwdriver (not supplied).



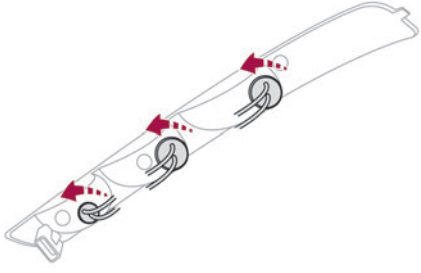
► Using the opening tool, unclip the cover of the access flap on the rear screw thread of the towing eye, then pull it towards you.



► Insert the screwdriver head diagonally in the cylindrical guide until you reach the lamp unit fixing bolt.
► Slacken the bolt by about 10 turns then pull the lamp unit to release it from the bumper.



► Disconnect the harness.



For each lamp:
► Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise and remove it.
► Remove the bulb and replace it.

Fuses

! **Changing a fuse**
All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The replacement of a fuse by a third party could cause a serious malfunction of the vehicle.

i **Installing electrical accessories**
The vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before fitting other electrical equipment or accessories to your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The Manufacturer accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing the vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied or not approved by it and not installed in accordance with its specifications, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or for charging a discharged battery.

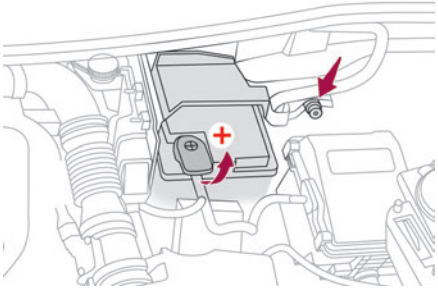
Lead-acid starter batteries

These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead).
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Accessing the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.

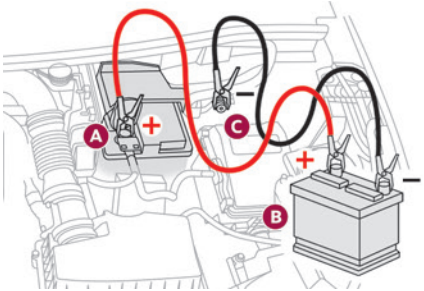


For access to the (+) terminal:
► Release the bonnet by pulling the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.
► Raise the bonnet.
(+) Positive terminal.
This terminal has a quick-release clamp.
(-) Negative terminal.
As the battery's negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is located near the battery.

Starting using another battery

If the vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (either external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



► Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster.
► Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).
► Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C**.
► Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
► Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
► Wait for it to return to idle.
► Disconnect the jump leads **in reverse order**.
► Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.

► Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

! Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functionalities.

! **Automatic gearbox**
Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

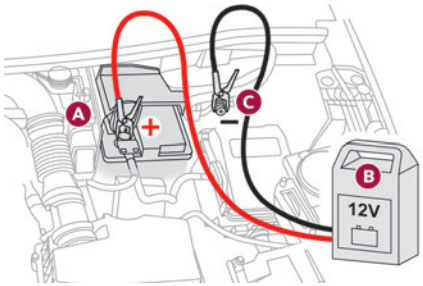
For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:
– When using the vehicle mainly for short journeys.
– If the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

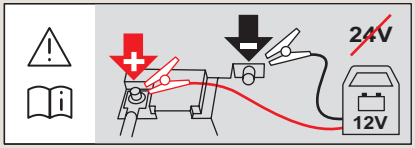
► Switch the ignition off.
► Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



► Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
► Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
► Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
- the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
- the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.

► At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

! If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.



! Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a dealer or by a qualified workshop who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

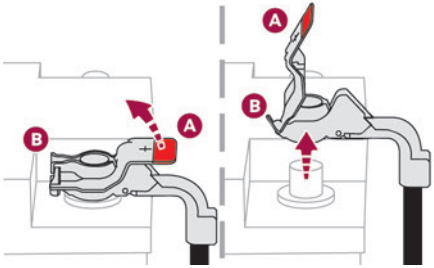
Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, we recommend disconnecting the battery if the vehicle is to be unused for an extended period.

Before disconnecting the battery:
► Close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof).
► Switch off all electricity-consuming devices (audio system, wipers, lamps, etc.).
► Switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.
After accessing the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

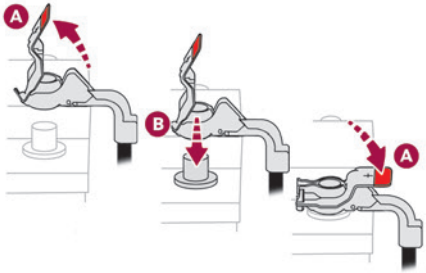
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



► Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.
► Raise lever **A** fully to release clamp **B**.
► Remove clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



► Raise lever **A** fully.
► Refit open clamp **B** on the **(+)** terminal.
► Push clamp **B** fully down.
► Lower lever **A** to lock clamp **B**.
► Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.

! Do not force the lever when pressing on it, as if the clamp is not positioned correctly, locking will then not be possible. Start the procedure again.

Following reconnection

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.
If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the relevant section, reinitialise certain equipment:
- Electronic key.
- Sunroof and electric blind.
- Electric windows.
- Date and time.
- Preset radio stations.

i After reconnecting the battery, the message "**Collision risk detection system fault**" is displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on. This operation is perfectly normal. The message will disappear while driving.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period with the vehicle immobilised, the duration of which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Accessory battery (Rechargeable hybrid)

The rechargeable hybrid system has two accessory batteries: one at the front and one at the rear of the vehicle.

The batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead). They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

! Protect your eyes and face before handling batteries.
All operations on the batteries must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

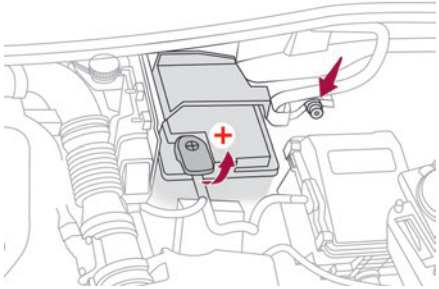
! **Replacing the batteries**
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

! **Jump-starting another vehicle**
Do not start or jump start another vehicle from the vehicle's batteries.

Accessing the batteries

Front

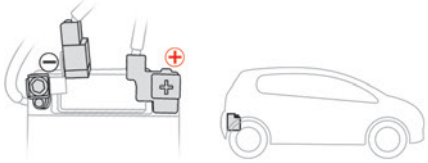
The front battery is located under the bonnet.



For access to the (+) terminal:
► Release the bonnet by pulling the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.
► Raise the bonnet.
(+) Positive terminal with a quick-release terminal.
(-) Negative terminal.
As the battery's negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is located near the battery.

Rear

The rear battery is located in the boot.
To reach the battery:



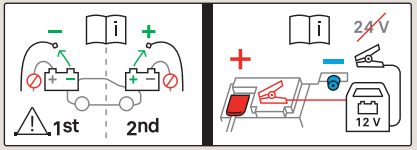
► Lift the boot floor.

(+) Positive terminal, protected by a red plastic cover (not accessible).
(-) Negative terminal with a black quick-release connector.

Charging the front battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the front battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the front battery:
– When using the vehicle mainly for short journeys.
– If the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

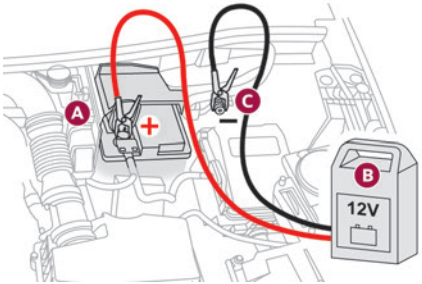
! To charge the vehicle's front battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.



! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

► Switch the ignition off.
► Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



► Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
► Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
► Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
- the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
- the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.

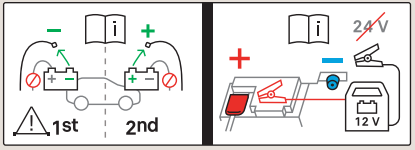
► At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

! Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a dealer or by a qualified workshop who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

Disconnection/reconnection of the batteries

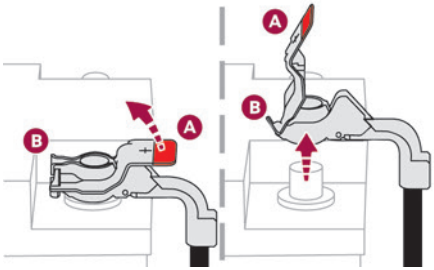
Procedure for disconnecting/reconnecting the batteries in the event of long-term immobilisation of the vehicle.
Before disconnecting the batteries:
► Open the driver's door and boot.
► Close all other doors.
► Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lamps, etc.).
► Switch off the ignition and wait for the **READY** indicator lamp to go out.
► Observe a waiting time of 4 minutes.

! Never reverse the order of the battery disconnection and reconnection steps - risk of irreversible damage!



Disconnection

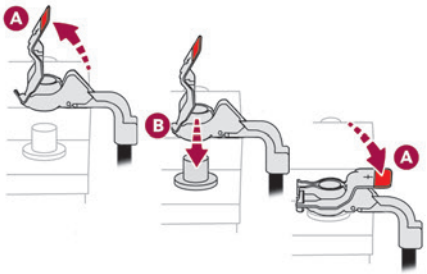
Rear battery:
► Disconnect the **(-)** terminal using the black quick-release connector.
Front battery:



► Disconnect the **(+)** terminal by disconnecting the red quick-release clamp:
- Raise lever **A** fully to release clamp **B**.
- Remove clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnection

Front battery:



► Connect the **(+)** terminal by connecting the red quick-release clamp:
- Raise lever **A** fully.
- Refit open clamp **B** on the **(+)** terminal.
- Push clamp **B** fully down.
- Lower lever **A** to lock clamp **B**.

Rear battery:

► Connect the **(-)** terminal using the black quick-release connector.

Following reconnection

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the relevant section, reinitialise certain equipment:
- Electronic key.
- Sunroof and electric blind.
- Electric windows.
- Date and time.
- Preset radio stations.

Towing the vehicle

General recommendations
Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

A professional towing service must be called if:
- Broken down on a motorway or main road.
- Not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake.
- Not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running.
- Towing with only two wheels on the ground.
- Four-wheel drive vehicle.
- No approved towbar available.

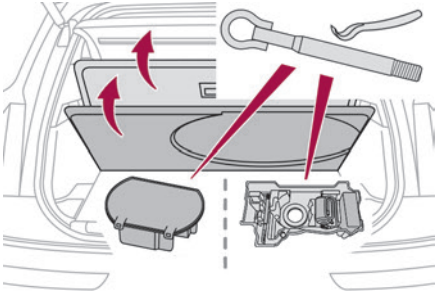
Rechargeable hybrid vehicles
Before any intervention, with the ignition on, depress the brake pedal and select mode **N**, then switch off the hybrid system (**READY** indicator lamp off).
Always call on professionals for recovery of the vehicle on a flatbed lorry or trailer.
Use the towing eye **only** to free the vehicle if it is stuck, or to secure it for recovery on a flatbed lorry or trailer.

	Towing constraints			
Type of vehicle (engine/gearbox)	**Front wheels on the ground**	**Rear wheels on the ground**	**Flatbed**	**4 wheels on the ground with towbar**
Internal combustion/Automatic	✗	✓	✓	✗
Hybrid 2WD	✗	✓	✓	✗
Hybrid 4WD	✗	✗	✓	✗

2WD: 2-wheel drive.
4WD: 4-wheel drive.

i In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles.

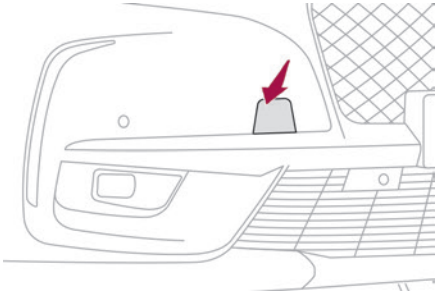
Accessing the tools



The opening tool for the rear protective cover is secured to the towing eye.
For more information on accessing the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing your vehicle

To access the front screw thread:



► Unclip the cover by pressing at its top left-hand corner.
► Release the cover.

To be towed:
► Screw the towing eye in fully.
► Install the towbar.
► Put the gearbox into neutral.

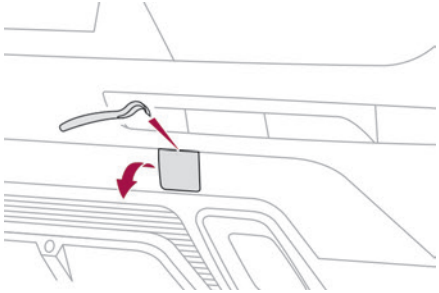
! Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission, etc.) and to the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

! **Automatic gearbox**
Never tow the vehicle with the driving wheels on the ground and the engine off.

► Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
► Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
► Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle

To access the rear screw thread:



► Unclip the cover, using the tool attached to the towing eye.
To tow:
► Screw the towing eye in fully.
► Install the towbar.
► Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
► Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
Only the values available at the time of publication are presented in the tables.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain missing values.

i The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.
For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

! When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

! Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding.
Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

Engines and towed loads - Petrol

Engines	PureTech 130 Automatic	THP 150	THP 165
Gearboxes	**EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)**	**EAT6 (Automatic 6-speed)**	**EAT6 (Automatic 6-speed)**
Codes	EB2ADTS ATN8 STT Euro 6.3	EP6FDTMD AT6III Euro 5	EP6FDTM AT6III Euro 5
Model codes: JR... J4...	HNSU-C1B	5GXV-C1A	5GYV-C1A
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,199	1,598	1,598
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96	110	121
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,290	600	600
Unbraked trailer (kg)	695	600	600
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	60	25	25

Engines	PureTech 180 Automatic	PureTech 215 Automatic	PureTech 225 Automatic
Gearboxes	**EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)**	**EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)**	**EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)**
Codes	EP6FADTXD ATN8 STT Euro 6.3	EP6FADTXM ATN8 Euro 6.1	EP6FADTX ATN8 STT Euro 6.3
Model codes: J4...	5GFU-C1B	EGZB-C1A	5GGU-C1B
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,598	1,598	1,598
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	133	158	165
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,550	600	1,550
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750	600	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	68	25	68

Engines and towed loads - Diesel

Engines	**BlueHDi 130 Automatic**	**BlueHDi 180 Automatic**	**HDi 180**	**HDi 180 S&S**
Gearboxes	**EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)**	**EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)**	**EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)**	**EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)**
Codes	DV5RC ATN8 STT Euro 6.3	DW10FC AMN8 STT Euro 6.2	DW10FCM AMN8 Euro 5	DW10FCM AMN8 STT Euro 5
Model codes: JC... JJ...	YHZU-C2B	EHZR-C2B	EHZN-C2A	EHZN-C2B
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,499	1,997	1,997	1,997
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96	130	130	130
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,450	1,550/1,850*	600	1,550
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750	750	600	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	60	68/80*	25	68

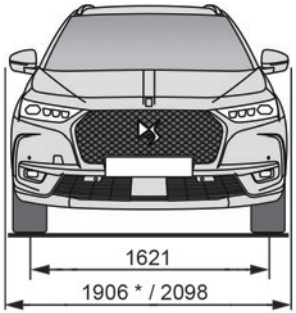
* Vehicles without sunroof.

Engines and towed loads - Rechargeable hybrid

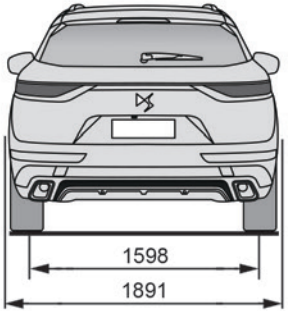
	E-TENSE 225	E-TENSE 4X4 300
Codes	EP6FADTXHPD EATN8 FWD Euro 6.3	EP6FADTXHPA EATN8 AWD Euro 6.3
Model codes: J4...	DGZU-C1	5GBU-C1
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,250	1,200
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	70	70
Petrol engine	PureTech 180	PureTech 200
Gearbox	Electric automatic 8-speed	Electric automatic 8-speed
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,598	1,598
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	132	147
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded
Electric motor		
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	80	Front: 80 Rear: 80
Traction battery		
Technology	Lithium-Ion	Lithium-Ion
Voltage (Volts AC)	240-400	240-400
Installed capacity (kWh)	13.2	13.2
Combined power (kW)	**165**	**220**

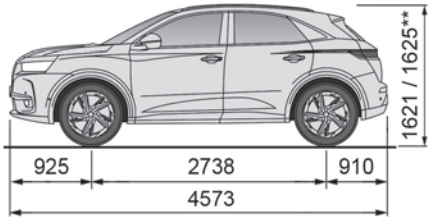
Dimensions (mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



* With folded mirrors.





** With longitudinal bars.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for vehicle identification and vehicle search.

A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.
Stamped on the chassis.
B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.
Printed on an adhesive label visible through the windscreen.
C. Manufacturer's label.
Affixed to the right-hand door.
Bears the following information:
- Manufacturer's name.
- European whole vehicle type approval number.
- Vehicle Identification number (VIN).
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
- Gross train weight (GTW).
- Maximum weight on the front axle.
- Maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tyres/paint code label.
Affixed to the driver's door.
Bears the following information about the tyres:
- Tyre pressures, unladen and laden.
- Tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
- Spare tyre inflation pressure.

Also indicates the paint colour code.

i The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting tyre pressure (on cold tyres). In the event of a change in the type of tyres, contact a dealer for the tyre fits approved for the vehicle.

DS CONNECT RADIO

Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone

i The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration, as well as the country of sale.

! For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:
- Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connecting to the CarPlay® or Android Auto applications (certain applications stop displaying when the vehicle is moving).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.

i The system is protected so that it only operates in the vehicle.
The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.

i The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

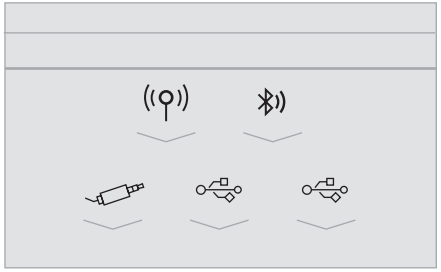
First steps

⏻ With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.
Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).
Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen.
At all times it is possible to display the rolling menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.
All touch-sensitive areas on the screen are white.
On pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, you can switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page or by swiping the pages to the left or right with your finger.
Press in the shaded area to go back up a level or confirm.
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:
- Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Radio Media and Telephone menu status information.
- Privacy status information.
- Access to the touch screen and digital instrument panel settings.

Audio source selection (depending on equipment):
- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB Memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).



i In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more.
The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1

Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).

Confirm a selection.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

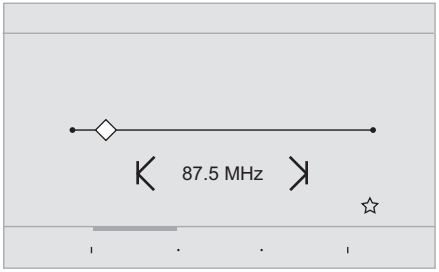
LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Applications

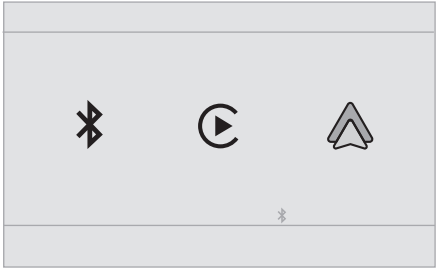
Access configurable equipment.

Radio Media



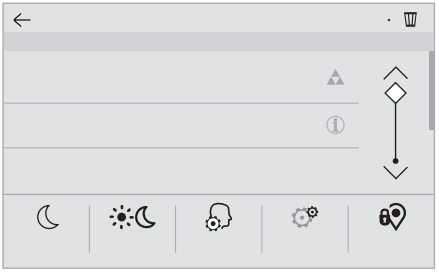
Select an audio source or radio station.

Telephone



Connect a mobile phone via Bluetooth®. Run certain applications from a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Settings

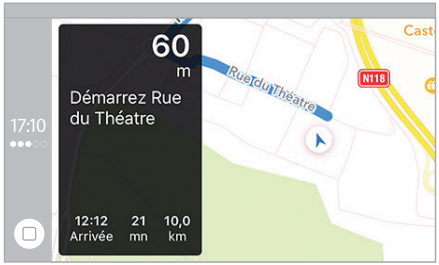


Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Driving

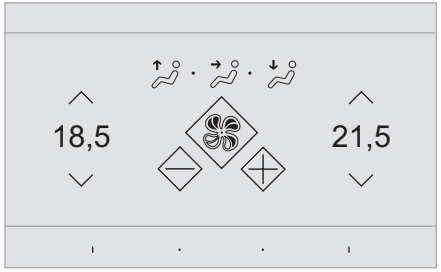
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Navigation



Configure the navigation and select your destination via CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Air conditioning



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

> ! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp and .png.

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Photos**".

Select a folder.

Select an image to view.

Press this button to display the details of the photo.

Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "SMS".

Select the "SMS" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to search and select a recipient.

Select the "Quick messages" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the bin alongside the selected message to delete it.

Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.

Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the bin to delete the message.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz KHz Press the frequency.

Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Changing the waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Band**" to change waveband.
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.
Or
Select a radio station or frequency.
Press "**Preset**".
Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**News**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**TA**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Audio settings

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Audio settings**".

Select the "**Tone**", "**Balance**", "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the sound settings.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience**, **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** sound settings are different and independent for each audio source.
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound.
The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Band**" to select "**DAB band**".

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up

"DAB" does not cover 100 % of the country.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

If "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume. When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary (AUX) jack socket

Depending on equipment

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).
This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**SOURCES**" button.
Select the source.

Bluetooth Streaming®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.
The Bluetooth profile must be activated.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the system.
If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

i Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts). It is also possible to use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with **CarPlay**® or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

i For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Manufacturer's website in your country.

i Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's CarPlay® or Android Auto technology on the vehicle's screen. For CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must first be activated on the smartphone. Unlock the smartphone for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work.
As principles and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend keeping the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system**.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

Depending on country.

i On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.
The "**CarPlay**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.
From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

If the smartphone has already connected by Bluetooth®.
Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.
From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

i When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

The CarPlay® navigation can be accessed at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

Depending on country.

On the smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

i The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.
From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.
Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telphone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press "**Bluetooth search**".

The list of detected telephones is displayed.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone.

All three profiles may connect by default.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**

Press the "Details" button for a paired device.

Select one or more profiles.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**

Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.

Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press

on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or

Press "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Parking the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or press and hold

the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or

Press and hold

the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

Settings

Configuring profiles

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to save.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press this button to activate the profile.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Press this button to reset the selected profile.

Adjusting the brightness

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press **Brightness**.

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**System configuration**".

Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to restore the initial settings.

> ! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the "**System info**" tab to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.
Press the "**Privacy**" tab,
or

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the private data mode.

Activate or deactivate:

- "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
- "**Only data sharing**"
- "**Data and vehicle position sharing**"

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Animated transitions**".

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Select "**Language**" to change the language.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to save the time.

Press this button to set the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to set the date.

Press the back arrow to save the date.

Select the display format for the date.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Time and date setting is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Radio

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the "RDS" function in the upper bar to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations.

The name of the radio station changes.

The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).

The system interprets these details as the station name.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).

Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).

► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.

Some characters in information about the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.

The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.

► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.

Playback of streaming files does not start.

The connected device does not automatically launch playback.

► Start playback from the device.

Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.

The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.

The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the device may not be visible.

► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.

► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".

The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.

► Check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).

Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.

Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.

► Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.

Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.

Android Auto and CarPlay are not available in all countries.

► Check the Google Android Auto or Apple website to see which countries are supported.

The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.

The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.

► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.

Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.

► Reduce ambient noise (close windows, turn down ventilation, slow down, etc.).

The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.

Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.

► Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.

When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.

Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.

When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.

When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.

Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.

There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.

To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.

► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. Adjust the sound functions to the middle position.

When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.

► Start the vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.

NAVIGATION

GPS navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

i The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration, as well as the country of sale.

! For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:
- Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connecting to the CarPlay® or Android Auto applications (certain applications stop displaying when the vehicle is moving).
- Watching a video (the video stops when the vehicle starts to move again).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.

i AM and DAB radio are not available on Hybrid vehicles.

i The system is protected so that it only operates in the vehicle.
The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.

i System and map updates can be downloaded from the Brand's website.
The update procedure is also available there.

i The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

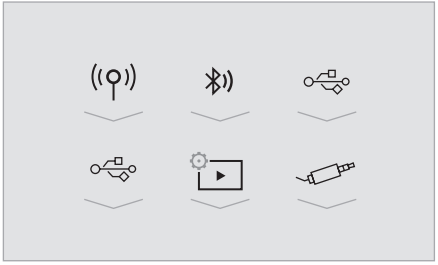
⏻ With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).
Use the menu buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Display the rolling menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.
All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the back arrow to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the side bars or in the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment):
- Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the audio source selection option, to view the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the "Notifications" of messages, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

Audio source selection (depending on equipment):
- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- Video (depending on equipment).



In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, favourite contacts, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more.
The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Voice control:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, system voice control.
Long press, voice commands from smartphone or CarPlay®, Android Auto via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

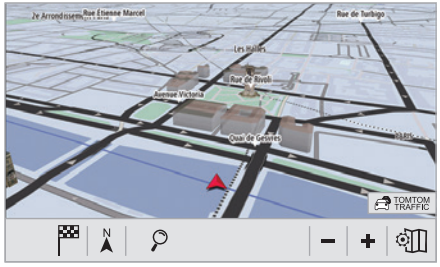
Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move through a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access presets.

LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of detected stations.

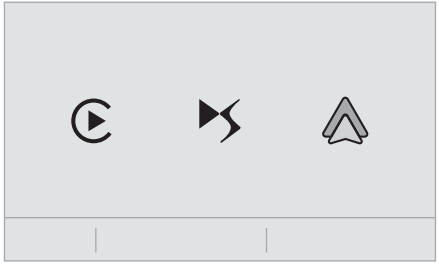
Menus

Connected navigation



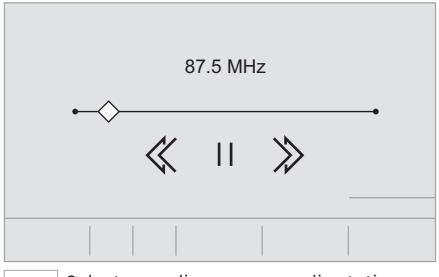
Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use real-time services, depending on equipment.

Applications



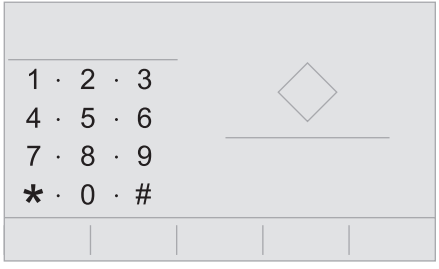
Run certain applications from a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or Android Auto.
Check the status of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

Radio Media



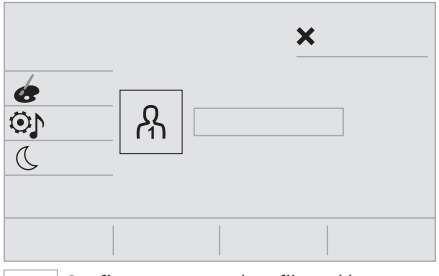
Select an audio source or radio station, or display photographs.

Telephone



Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Vehicle

Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Air conditioning

Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Voice commands

Steering wheel-mounted controls

Voice commands:
Voice commands can be issued from any screen page after a short press on the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment), as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:
– **use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
– always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
– for best results, closing the windows and sunroof is recommended, to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
– before issuing a voice command, ask any other passengers to refrain from speaking.

First steps

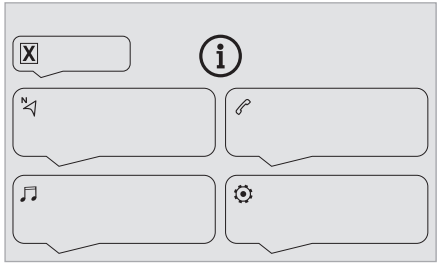
Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"Navigate to address 11 regent street, London"

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"Play artist Madonna"
Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"Call David Miller"

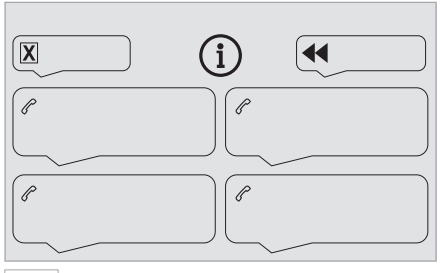
! The voice commands, with a choice of 17 languages (Arabic, Brazilian, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Farsi, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.
For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.
Example: Guide to / Navigate to / Go to / ...
The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

Information - Using the system

When voice commands are activated, by briefly pressing the button, help is displayed on the touch screen, offering various menus and enabling voice-based interaction with the system.



A number of commands are available when a menu is selected.



Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step.

There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands

Voice commands

Set dialogue mode as novice - expert
Select user 1 / Select profile John
Increase temperature
Decrease temperature

Help messages

There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls". Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.

"Navigation" voice commands

Voice commands

Navigate home
Navigate to work
Navigate to preferred address, Tennis club
Navigate to contact, John Miller
Navigate to address 11 regent street, London

Help messages

To plan a route, say "navigate to" followed by the address, the contact name or an intersection. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", "navigate to contact, John Miller", or "navigate to intersection of Regent Street, London". You can specify if it's a preferred address, or a Point of Interest. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", or "navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London". Or, you can just say, "navigate home". To see Points of Interest on a map, you can say things like "show POI hotels in Banbury". For more information say "help with points of interest" or "help with route guidance".
To choose a destination, say something like "navigate to line three" or "select line two". If you can't find the destination but the street's right, say for example "select the street in line three". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Tell me the remaining distance
Tell me the remaining time
Tell me the arrival time
Stop route guidance

Help messages

You can say "stop" or "resume route guidance". To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". To learn more commands, try saying "help with navigation".

Voice commands

Show POI "hotel" at the destination
Show nearby POI petrol station
Navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London
Navigate to POI petrol station along the route

Help messages

To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury", "show nearby parking", "show hotel at the destination" or "show petrol station along the route". If you prefer to navigate directly to a point of interest, you can say "navigate to nearby petrol station". If you feel you are not being well understood, try to say the word "POI" in front of the point of interest. For example say "navigate to POI restaurant at the destination".
To choose a POI, say something like "select line 2". If you've searched for a Point of Interest and don't see the one you're after, you can filter further by saying something like "select POI in line 2", or "select the city in line 3". You can also scroll through the list by saying "next page" or "previous page".

i Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

Voice commands

Turn on source radio - Streaming Bluetooth - ...

Help messages

You can select an audio source by saying "turn on source" followed by the device name. For example, "turn on source, Streaming Bluetooth", or "turn on source, radio". Use the command "play" to specify the type of music you'd like to hear. You can choose between "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".

Voice commands

Tune to channel BBC Radio 2
Tune to 98.5 FM
Tune to preset number five

Help messages

You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say for example "tune to preset number five".

Voice commands

What's playing?

Help messages

To choose what you'd like to play, start by saying "play" and then the item. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play line 3" or "select line 2". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Play song Hey Jude
Play artist Madonna
Play album Thriller

Help messages

I'm not sure what you'd like to play. Please say "play" and then a song title, an album title, or an artist name. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play artist Madonna" or "play album Thriller". To select a line number from the display, say "select line two". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

i Media voice commands are available only with a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

i If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.

Voice commands

Call David Miller*
Call voicemail*
Display calls*

Help messages

To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
To choose a contact, say something like "select line three". To move around the list say "next

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

"Text message" voice commands

i If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.

i The "Text messages" voice commands function allows you to dictate and send an SMS.
Dictate the text, taking care to pause briefly between each word.
When you have finished, the voice recognition system will automatically generate an SMS.

Voice commands

Send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late

Help messages

From the list of quick messages, say the name of the one you'd like to send. To move around the list you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Send SMS to John Miller, I'm just arriving
Send SMS to David Miller at the office, don't wait for me

Help messages

Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Listen to most recent message*

Help messages

To hear your last message, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.

i The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination

Intuitive method:

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press "**Search...**".

Enter an address or the key words for the destination.

Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

Or

Guided method:

i In order to be able to use the navigation, you must enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" (suggestions are displayed automatically when you begin typing), then enter the "**Number**" using the virtual keypad, or select an address from the "**Contact**" list or the address "**History**".

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

i If you do not confirm the number, the navigation system will show one end of the street.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Enter address**".

Then

Select the "**Country**".

Select the keyboard "language".

Change the keyboard "type" according to the selected "language": ABCDE; AZERTY; QWERTY or QWERTZ.

Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**", and confirm by pressing on the displayed suggestions.

OK Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/or

Select "**See on map**" to choose the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

i Zoom in/out using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

To a recent destination

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

i Select "**Position**" to see the point of arrival on the map.

To "Home" or "My work"

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.

Select "**Home**".

Or

Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

To a contact

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start guided navigation.

To points of interest (POI)

Guided method:

Points of interest (POI) are listed in different categories.

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Points of interest**".

Select the "**Travel**", "**leisure**", "**Commercial**", "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or

Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK Press "**OK**" to calculate the route.

Or

Intuitive method:

i You can only select this method of using the service if a network connection is active; this may be either a "network connection provided by the vehicle", if you use

the DS CONNECT BOX solution, or else a "network connection provided by the user" via a smartphone,
In both cases, the system is automatically connected to the Internet, if network coverage permits.

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Search**".

Press on the mode shown in the bottom right of the screen (On-Board or Connected) to change the "Database".

Select the "Database" in "On-Board" mode (integrated into the map), or in "Connected" mode (connected to the Internet).

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Enter an address or the key words for the destination (POI).

Press "**OK**" to start the search.

Select the "**On the route**", "**Around the vehicle**" or "**At destination**" tab to refine your search.

Select the desired address to calculate the route.

To a point on the map

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.

Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.

Press this button to start guided navigation.

Or

Press this button to save the displayed address.

A long press on a point opens a list of nearby POIs.

To GPS coordinates

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Touch the screen with a finger to go to the next image.

Press this button to display the world map. Using the grid, select the desired country or region by zooming.

Press this button to display or enter the GPS coordinates.

A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.

Choose the type of coordinates:

DMS for: Degrees, Minutes, Seconds.

DD for: Degrees, Decimals.

Press this button to start guided navigation.

Or

Press this button to save the displayed address.

OR

Press this button to enter the "**Latitude**" value using the virtual keypad.

And

Press this button to enter the "**Longitude**" value using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

Available in some countries.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are based on a European standard for traffic information broadcasting via the RDS system on FM radio, sending traffic information in real time. The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away when routes are calculated, to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

Connected navigation

Connected navigation connection

Depending on version, vehicle trim level and subscription to online services and options.

Network connection provided by the vehicle

With the DS CONNECT BOX solution, the system is automatically connected to the Internet and connected services, and does not require the user to provide a connection via their smartphone.

OR

Network connection provided by the user

For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Brand's website in your country.

Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

As processes and standards are constantly changing, we recommend you **update the smartphone operating system as well as the date and time on the smartphone and system**, to ensure that the communication process between the smartphone and the system functions correctly.

USB connection

Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

Bluetooth connection

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

Wi-Fi connection

WIFI Select a Wi-Fi network detected by the system and connect to it.

This function is only available if it has been activated either via the "Notifications" or via the "Applications" menu.

Press "**Notifications**".

Select Wi-Fi to activate it.

OR

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" network Wi-Fi and the "**Password**".

OK Press "**OK**" to establish a connection between the smartphone and the vehicle's system.

Usage restrictions:
With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only available with a Wi-Fi connection.
The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

Authorize sending information

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**System configuration**".

Select the "**Private mode**" tab.

OR

Press "**Notifications**".

Press "**Private mode**".

THEN

Activate or deactivate:

- "**No data sharing except for company vehicles**".
- "**Only data sharing**"
- "**Sharing data and vehicle position**"

Settings specific to connected navigation

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select the "**Map**" tab.

Activate or deactivate:
- "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".
- "**Guidance to final destination on foot**".

These settings must be configured for each profile.

Press "**OK**" to confirm your selection.

Select the "**Alerts**" tab.

Activate or deactivate:
- "**Advise of car park nearby**".
- "**Filling station alert**".
- "**Risk areas alert**" then press the warning icon (triangle) to configure the alerts.
- "**Give an audible warning**".
- "**Advise proximity of POI 1**".
- "**Advise proximity of POI 2**".

Press "**OK**" to confirm your selection.

The "Notifications", located in the upper bar, can be accessed at any time.

Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

When "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" appears, the services are available.

The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger area pack (optional).

Declaration: "Risk areas alert"

To send information about danger zones, select the option:**Allow declaration of danger zones**

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**Declare a new danger zone**" button located in the side bars or the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment).

Select the "**Type**" option to select the type of "Danger area".

Select the ""**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to save and send the information.

Displaying fuel information

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Press "**POI on map" to display the list of points of interest.**

Press one of the buttons to search for "**Stations**".

Activate/deactivate "**Stations**".

Press this button to display a secondary page.

Select the "**Settings**" tab.

Select the desired fuel.

Press "**OK**" to save.

Displaying charging station details

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Press "**POI on map" to display the list of points of interest.**

Press one of the buttons to search for "**Stations**".

Activate/deactivate "**Stations**".

Press this button to display a secondary page.

Select the "**Settings**" tab.

Select the desired connector type.

Press "**OK**" to save.

Displaying weather information

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Select "**View map**".

Select "**Weather**".

Press this button to display basic information.

Press this button to display detailed weather information.

The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with **CarPlay**® or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Manufacturer's website in your country.

Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's CarPlay® or Android Auto technology on the vehicle's screen. For CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must first be activated on the smartphone. Unlock the smartphone for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work.
As principles and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend keeping the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system**.

Connectivity

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the **CarPlay**® or **Android Auto** functions.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

Depending on country.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.
The "**CarPlay**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "CarPlay®" function.

Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

Android Auto smartphone connection

Depending on country.

Install the "**Android Auto**" application on the smartphone via "Google Play".
The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.
From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.
Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "Android Auto" function.
Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.
OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.
Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

In Android Auto mode, the function that displays rolling menus by briefly pressing the screen with three fingers is disabled.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Car Apps

Press **Applications** to display the main page.
Press "**Car Apps**" to display the applications home page.

Internet Browser

Press **Applications** to display the main page.
Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "**Connected Apps**" function.
Press "**Connected Apps**" to display the browser home page.
Select the country of residence.
OK Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Bluetooth connection®

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the smartphone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

The Bluetooth function must be activated and the smartphone configured as "Visible to all".

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the smartphone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the smartphone.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the smartphone.

Procedure from the smartphone

Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.
In the system, accept the connection request from the smartphone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Bluetooth connection**".
Select "**Search**".
The list of detected smartphones is displayed.

Select the name of the chosen smartphone in the list.

Depending on the type of smartphone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the smartphone with 3 profiles:
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the smartphone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (if the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), after first activating smartphone connection sharing.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection via the smartphone's Wi-Fi.

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad , enter the Wi-Fi network "**Key**" and "**Password**".

OK Press "**OK**" to establish the connection.

The Wi-Fi connection and Wi-Fi connection sharing are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Depending on equipment.

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate Wi-Fi connection sharing.

And/or

Select the "**Settings**" tab to change the system's network name and password.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

To protect against unauthorised access and to make all systems as secure as possible, the use of a security code or a complex password is recommended.

Managing connections

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function, you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio stations**" on the secondary page.
Press "**Frequency**".
Enter the values using the virtual keypad. First enter the units then click on the decimals field to enter the figures after the decimal point.
OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)
Press "**Presets**".
Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Changing the waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
To change the waveband, press "Band...", displayed at the bottom right of the screen.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Radio settings**".
Select "**General**".
Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".
OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Radio settings**".
Select "**General**".
Activate/deactivate "**Display radio text**".
OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.
Select "**Announcements**".
Activate/deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".
OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound.

The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press “Band …” at the top centre of the screen to display the "**DAB**" waveband.

FM-DAB tracking

“DAB" does not cover 100 % of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, “FM-DAB auto follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".

Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK Press "**OK**".

i If “FM-DAB auto tracking" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume.
When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on “FM" (“**FM-DAB**" option shaded), or "FM-DAB auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected.
The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).
This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Select "**SOURCES**".

Select the source.

Watching a video

Depending on equipment/Depending on version/Depending on country.
Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

i Video control commands are accessible only through the touch screen.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Select "**SOURCES**".

Select **Video** to start the video.

II To remove the USB memory stick, press the pause button to stop the video, then remove the memory stick.
The system can play video files in the MPEG-4 Part 2, MPEG-2, MPEG-1, H.264, H.263, VP8, WMV and RealVideo formats.

Streaming Bluetooth®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.
The Bluetooth profile must be activated.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

i Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices and Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.
The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

i The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telphone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

i If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then

reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of detected devices.
In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or

Select "**Search**".
The list of detected telephones is displayed.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation, after first activating smartphone connection sharing.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).
To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press the "Details" button.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.
Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted telephone button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press

on the steering mounted telephone button to reject the call.

Or

Select "**End call**" on the touch screen.

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or press and hold

the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Contact**".
Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or

Press and hold

the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Calls**".
Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Select "**Contact**".

Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

Press the "**Telephone**" tab to enter the contact's telephone number(s).

Press the "**Address**" tab to enter the contact's address(es).

Press the "**Email**" tab to enter the contact's email address(es).

OK

Press "**OK**" to save.

Press this button to sort contacts by Surname+first name or by First name+surname.

The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**All**", "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" tab.

Select the details of the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Press "**Play**" to listen to the message.

Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.
Some smartphones retrieve messages or email messages more slowly than others.

Managing quick messages

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**Delayed**", "**My arrival**", "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab, enabling you to create new messages.

Press "**Create**" to write a new message.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press "**Transfer**" to select one or more recipients.

Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**Incoming**", "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

! Access to email messages depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.

Settings

Audio settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Select "**Audio settings**".

Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**", "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

i The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.
Available only with the front and rear speaker configuration.

i The **Ambience** setting (choice of 6 ambiances) as well as for **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**".
The "**Position**" settings (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.

Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

Configuring profiles

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.

Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.

Select the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

Press this button to reset the selected profile.

Resetting the selected profile activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to link "**Audio settings**" with it.

Select "**Audio settings**".

Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**"; "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".

Press "**OK**" to save the selected profile's settings.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate:**Automatic scrolling**

Select "**Brightness**".

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
Select "**Factory settings**" to restore the initial settings.

Resetting the system to "Factory settings" activates English and degrees Fahrenheit and deactivates summer time.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to set the date.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format for the date.

Time and date setting is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to set the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Colour schemes

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

! As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Select "**Color schemes**".

Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

i Whenever the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Navigation

I cannot enter the navigation address.
The address is not recognised.
► Use the "intuitive method" by pressing the "Search..." button at the bottom of the "Navigation" page.

The route calculation is not successful.
The route settings may conflict with the current location (for example, if toll roads are excluded but the vehicle is on a toll road).
► Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.

I am not receiving "Danger zone" alerts.
You have not subscribed to the online services option.
► If you have subscribed to the option:
- a few days may elapse before the service is activated,
- services may not be selected in the system menu,
- online services are not active ("TOMTOM TRAFFIC" not shown on the map).

The POIs do not appear.
The POIs have not been selected.
► Set the zoom level to 200 metres (656 ft), or select POIs from the POI list.

The "Danger zone" audible warning feature is not working.
The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.
► Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the sound settings.

The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.
The route settings do not take account of TMC messages.
► Configure the "Traffic info" function in the route settings list (None, Manual or Automatic).

I am receiving a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.
As well as providing guided navigation, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.
► Zoom the map to show the exact location of the "Danger area". You can select "On the route" to stop receiving warnings or decrease the warning duration.

Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.
On starting, a few minutes may elapse before the system begins to receive traffic information.
► Wait until traffic information is being received correctly (traffic information icons shown on the map).
In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.
This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.
On starting, GPS initialisation may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.

► Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.
This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.
During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.
► Check that the online services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

The reception quality of the radio station being listened to gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (e.g. no sound, "87.5" MHz is displayed).
The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.
► Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
The aerial is missing or damaged (e.g. when going through a car wash or in an underground car park).
► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
The surrounding area (e.g. hill, building, tunnel, underground car park, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS tracking mode.
This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.
The name of the radio station changes.
The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.
Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).
The system interprets these details as the station name.
► Press "Update list" in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).
Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).
► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
There may be an extended pause after inserting a USB stick.
The system reads a variety of data (folder, title, artist, etc.). This can take from a few seconds to a few minutes.
This is perfectly normal.
Some characters in information about the currently playing media may not be displayed correctly.
The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.
► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.
The connected device does not automatically launch playback.
► Start playback from the device.
Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.
The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I am unable to connect my Bluetooth telephone.
The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the device may not be visible.
► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.
► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
► Deactivate then reactivate the telephone's Bluetooth function.
The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.
► You can check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.
Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.

► Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.

Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.

Android Auto and CarPlay are not available in all countries.

► Check the list of supported countries via these websites: Google Android Auto or Apple.

The volume of the telephone connected via Bluetooth is too low.

The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.

► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.

Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.

► Reduce ambient noise (e.g. close the windows, reduce ventilation, slow down).

Some contacts are duplicated in the list.

The options for synchronising contacts are: synchronise the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.

► Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".

The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.

Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.

► Modify the telephone directory display settings.

The system is not receiving SMS text messages.

Bluetooth mode does not allow SMS text messages to be sent to the system.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.

When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.

Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.

When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.

When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.

Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.

There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.

To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.

► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. We recommend setting the sound functions (Bass, Treble, Balance) to the middle position, setting the musical ambience to "None", setting loudness correction to "Active" in USB mode and "Inactive" in Radio mode.

► In all cases, after applying sound settings, adjust the volume level on the portable device (to a high level) first. Then adjust the volume level on the audio system.

When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.

► Start the vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.

The date and time cannot be set.

Date and time settings are only available if satellite synchronisation is deactivated.

► Settings menu/Options/Date-Time Setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

Event data recorders

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. Control units process data which is received by vehicle sensors, for example, or which they generate themselves or exchange amongst themselves. Some control units are necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle, others assist you while you drive (driver assistance systems), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.
The following contains general information about data processing in the vehicle. You will find additional information as to which specific data is uploaded, stored and passed on to third parties and for what purpose in your vehicle under the key word Data Protection closely linked to the references for the affected functional characteristics in the relevant owner's manual or in the general terms of sale. These are also available online.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data for operation of the vehicle.
This data includes, for example:
– vehicle status information (e.g. speed, movement delay, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, "seat belts fastened" display)
– ambient conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor)
As a rule such data is transient and is not stored for longer than an operational cycle, and only processed on board the vehicle itself. Often control units include data storage (including the vehicle key). This is used to allow information to be documented temporarily or permanently on vehicle condition, component stress, maintenance requirements and technical events and errors.
Depending on technical equipment levels, the data stored is as follows:
– system component operating states (e.g. fill level, tyre pressure, battery status)
– faults and defects in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes)
– system reactions in special driving situations (e.g. triggering of an airbag, actuation of the stability control systems)
– information on events damaging the vehicle
– for electric vehicles the amount of charge in the high-voltage battery, estimated range
In special cases (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to save data that would otherwise just be volatile.
When you use services (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the operating data saved can be read together with the vehicle identification number and used where necessary. Staff working for the service network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. breakdown services) can read the data from the vehicle.
The same applies to warranty work and quality assurance measures.
Data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port prescribed by law in the vehicle.
The operating data read documents the technical condition of the vehicle or individual components and assists with fault diagnosis, compliance with warranty obligations and quality improvement.
This data, in particular information on component stress, technical events, operator errors and other faults, is transmitted to the manufacturer where appropriate, together with the vehicle identification number. The manufacturer is also subject to product liability. The manufacturer potentially also uses operating data from vehicles for product recalls. This data can also be used to check customer warranty and guarantee claims.
Fault memories in the vehicle can be reset by a service company when carrying out servicing or repairs or at your request.

Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and custom settings can be stored in the vehicle and changed or reset at any time.
Depending on the equipment level in question, these include
– seat and steering wheel position settings
– chassis and air conditioning settings
– custom settings such as interior lighting
You can input your own data in the infotainment functions for your vehicle as part of the selected features.
Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

– multimedia data such as music, videos or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system
– address book data for use with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system
– input destinations
– data on the use of online services

This data for comfort and infotainment functions can be stored locally in the vehicle or be kept on a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player). Data that you have input yourself can be deleted at any time.
This data can only be transmitted out of the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in accordance with the settings selected by you.

Smartphone integration, e.g. Android Auto or Apple CarPlay

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle so that you can control it via the controls integrated in the vehicle. The smartphone image and sound can be output via the multimedia system in this case. At the same time, specific information is transmitted to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as position data, day / night mode and other general vehicle information. For more information, please see the operating instructions for the vehicle / infotainment system.
Integration allows selected smartphone apps to be used, such as navigation or music playback. No further integration is possible between smartphone and vehicle, in particular active access to vehicle data. The nature of further data processing is determined by the provider of the app used. Whether you can define settings, and if so which ones, is dependent on the app in question and your smartphone's operating system.

Online services

If your vehicle has a radio network connection, this allows data to be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. The radio network connection is made possible by means of a transmitter device in your vehicle or a mobile device provided by you (e.g. a smartphone). Online functions can be used via this radio network connection. These include online services and applications / apps provided to you by the manufacturer or other providers.

Proprietary services

In the case of the manufacturer's online services, the relevant functions are described by the manufacturer in an appropriate location (e.g. Owner's Manual, the manufacturer's website) and the associated data protection information is provided. Personal data may be used to provide online services. Data exchange for this purpose takes place via a protected connection, e.g. using the manufacturer's IT systems provided for the purpose. Collection, processing and use of personal data for the purposes of preparation of services take place solely on the basis of legal permission, e.g. in the case of a legally prescribed emergency communication system or a contractual agreement, or by virtue of consent. You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (which are subject to charges to some extent) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire radio network connection. This does not include statutory functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

Third party services

If you make use of online services from other providers (third parties), these services are subject to the liability and data protection and usage conditions of the provider in question. The manufacturer frequently has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.
Therefore, please note the nature, scope and purpose of the collection and use of personal data within the scope of third party services provided by the service provider in question.

180° rear vision 145
360 Vision 142, 145

A

ABS 83
Accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) 158–159
Accessories 80
Active Safety Brake 132, 134
Active Scan Suspension 111
Active suspension 111
Adaptive headlamp lighting 73
AdBlue® 19, 175
AdBlue® tank 176
Additive, Diesel 173–174
Adjusting headlamps 70
Adjusting head restraints 44
Adjusting seat 44–45
Adjusting the air distribution 55–56
Adjusting the air flow 53, 55–56
Adjusting the date 217, 239
Adjusting the height and reach of
the steering wheel 48
Adjusting the seat angle 45
Adjusting the seat belt height 86
Adjusting the temperature 53–54
Adjusting the time 23, 216, 239
Advanced Traction Control 85
Advice on care and maintenance 157, 178
Advice on driving 8, 101
Airbags 88, 90, 92
Airbags, curtain 89–90
Airbags, front 89–90, 92
Airbags, lateral 89–90
Air conditioning 52–53
Air conditioning, automatic 57
Air conditioning, digital 54
Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic 54
Air conditioning, manual 53
Air intake 55–56
Air vents 52
Alarm 38–39
Amplifier, audio 63
Android Auto connection 231
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 83
Antitheft / Immobiliser 31
Apple CarPlay connection 213, 230
Applications 231
Armrest, front 63
Armrest, rear 65
Assistance call 81–82
Assistance, emergency braking 83, 133
Audible warning 81
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 212, 235

B

Battery, 12 V 170, 174, 190–195
Battery, ancillaries 193
Battery, charging 192, 194–195
Battery, remote control 32, 59
Blanking screen (snow shield) 169
Blind 41–42
Blind spot sensors 139
BlueHDi 19, 173, 180
Bluetooth (hands-free) 214, 235–236
Bluetooth (telephone) 214–215, 235–236
Bodywork 178
Bonnet 170–171
Boot 33–35, 67
Brake discs 175
Brake lamps 189
Brakes 174–175
Braking 110
Braking assistance system 83
Braking, automatic emergency 132, 134
Braking, dynamic emergency 105–106
Brightness 216
Bulbs 189
Bulbs (changing) 187–189

C

Cable, audio 234
Cable, Jack 234
Capacity, fuel tank 155
Care of the bodywork 178
Central locking 30
Changing a bulb 187–189
Changing a fuse 190

Changing a wheel 181, 184
Changing a wiper blade 77–78
Changing the remote control battery 32
Charge level indicator
(Rechargeable hybrid) 21
Charger, induction 62
Charger, wireless 62
Charging cable 160
Charging cable
(Rechargeable hybrid) 158–159, 165
Charging connector
(Rechargeable hybrid) 158, 164–165
Charging flap
(Rechargeable hybrid) 158, 164–165
Charging the traction battery
(Rechargeable hybrid) 21, 157, 164–165
CHECK 21
Checking the engine oil level 19
Checking the levels 172–173
Checking tyre pressures
(using the kit) 182, 184
Checks 172, 174–175
Checks, routine 174–175
Child lock 99–100
Children 87, 93, 95–96, 99
Children (safety) 99–100
Child seats 87, 90–91, 93
Child seats, conventional 93
Child seats, i-Size 99
Child seats, ISOFIX 95–96
Cigar lighter 61
Cleaning (advice) 157, 178–179
Clock 23
Closing the boot 29–30, 34
Closing the doors 29–30, 33
Collision Risk Alert 132–133
Comfort mode 113
Configuration, vehicle 24
Connected applications 231
Connection, Bluetooth 214–215,
231–232, 235–236
Connection, MirrorLink 213
Connection, Wi-Fi network 232
Connectivity 230
Consumption figures 25
Container, AdBlue® 176
Control, emergency boot release 34
Control, emergency door 31–32
Control, heated seats 46–47
Controls, steering mounted 106–108
Control stalk, lighting 68, 70
Control stalk, wipers 76–79
Control unit 158–160, 165
Courtesy lamp, front 64
Courtesy lamps 64
Cover, load space 65
Cruise control 120, 122–124
Cruise control, adaptive 124
Cruise control by speed limit recognition 120
Cruise control, dynamic with Stop function 120
Cup holder 61

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) -
Digital radio 211, 233–234
Date (setting) 217, 239
Daytime running lamps 69, 188
Deactivating the passenger airbag 89, 92
Deadlocking 28, 30
Deferred charging 25, 166
Deferred charging
(Rechargeable hybrid) 25–26, 158, 164
Defrosting 49, 57
Defrosting, front 57
Demisting 49, 57
Demisting, front 57
Demisting, rear 57
Demisting, rear screen 57
Dials and gauges 10
Digital instrument panel 10–11
Dimensions 204
Dipstick 19, 172
Direction indicators 69–70, 188–189
Domestic charging 160
Domestic charging (Rechargeable hybrid) 165
Door pockets 61
Doors 33
Driver's attention warning 135
Driving 43–44, 101
Driving aids camera (warnings) 117
Driving aids (recommendations) 117
Driving economically 8

Driving modes 85, 111
Driving positions (storing) 46
DS Drive Assist 124
DS Park Pilot 150
Dynamic stability control (DSC) 83–84

E

EBFD 83
Eco-driving (advice) 8
ECO mode 111
Economy mode 170
Electric automatic gearbox
(Rechargeable hybrid) 109
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 83
Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 83
Emergency call 81–82
Emergency switching off 103–104
Emergency warning lamps 80, 180
Emissions control system, SCR 20, 175
Energy economy mode 170
Energy flows 25
Energy recovery 21, 110
Engine 175
Engine compartment 170–171
Engine, Diesel 155, 172, 180, 202
Engine, petrol 112, 171, 200
Engines 199–200, 202
Environment 8, 32, 59
e-Save function (energy reserve) 26
ESC (electronic stability control) 83
Expanded traffic sign recognition 120–121
Exterior lighting 71

F

Fatigue detection 134–135
Filling the AdBlue® tank 173, 176
Filling the fuel tank 155–156
Filter, air 174
Filter, oil 174
Filter, particle 173–174
Filter, passenger compartment 52, 174
Fitting a wheel 185–186
Fitting roof bars 168–169
Fittings, boot 65
Fittings, interior 61–62
Fittings, rear 65
Flap, charging 166
Flap, fuel filler 155–156
Flashing indicators 69–70, 189
Flat bed (recovery) 196
Floor, boot, adjustable 67
Fluid, brake 173
Fluid, engine coolant 173
Foglamps, front 68, 74, 188
Foglamps, rear 68
Folding the rear seats 50–51
Folding/unfolding the door mirrors 48
Four-wheel drive (4WD) 113, 170
Frequency (radio) 233
Fuel 8, 155
Fuel consumption 8, 21
Fuel tank 155–156
Fuses 190

G

Gauge, fuel 155
Gearbox, automatic 106–109, 113, 174, 192
Gearbox, manual 113
Gear shift indicator ~ Gear efficiency
indicator 114
Glove box 61
G.P.S. 227
Grab handles 61

H

Hands-free access 36–37
Hands-free tailgate 35–37
Hazard warning lamps 80, 180
headlamp adjustment 70
Headlamp adjustment 70
Headlamps, automatic dipping 72
Headlamps, automatic illumination 70–71
Headlamps, dipped beam 188–189
Headlamps, halogen 70, 188–189
Headlamps, main beam 72, 188–189

Headlamps, Xenon 70, 188
Head restraints, front 44
Head restraints, rear 49–51
Heated and ventilated seat controls 47
Heated and ventilated seats 47
Heating 52, 58–59
Heating, additional 58–59
Heating, programmable 26, 58–59
Hi-Fi system 63
High voltage 157
Hill start assist 113–114
Histogramme, fuel consumption 25–26
Horn 81

I

Ignition 103, 237
Ignition on 103
Immobiliser, electronic 102
Indicator, AdBlue® range 19
Indicator, coolant temperature 19
Indicator, engine oil level 19
Indicators, direction 69, 189
Inflating tyres 175, 205
Inflating tyres and accessories
(using the kit) 182, 184
Infrared camera 75, 118
Instrument panel 10–11, 11, 21, 22, 23, 118
Instrument panel (Rechargeable hybrid) 10
Intelligent Traction Control 85
Internet browser 228, 231
ISOFIX mountings 95

J

Jack 181–182, 184, 234
Jump starting 191

K

Key 27, 31–32
Key, electronic 28–30
Keyless Entry and Starting 28–30, 102–103
Key not recognised 103–104
Key with remote control 27, 102
Kit, hands-free 214, 235–236
Kit, puncture repair 181–182
Kit, temporary puncture repair 181–182, 184

L

Labels 6
Labels, identification 204
Lamp, boot 67
Lamps, parking 70
Lamps, rear 189
Lams with Full LED technology 70, 74
Lane assist 124, 128–130
Lane departure warning active 136
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) 136
Leather (care) 179
LEDs - Light-emitting diodes 69, 188–189
Level, AdBlue® 173
Level, brake fluid 173
Level, Diesel additive 173–174
Level, engine coolant 19, 173
Level, engine oil 19, 172
Levels and checks 172–174
Level, screenwash fluid 77, 173
Light-emitting diodes - LEDs 69, 188–189
Lighting, cornering 74
Lighting dimmer 22
Lighting, directional 74
Lighting, exterior 68, 71
Lighting, guide-me home 28, 71
Lighting, interior 64
Lighting, mood 64
Lighting, welcome 71
Loading 66, 168–169
Load reduction mode 170
Locating your vehicle 28
Locking 28–29, 31
Locking from the inside 30
Locking the doors 30–31
Long objects, transporting 65
Low fuel level 155

M

Mains socket (domestic network) 158–159
Maintenance (advice) 157, 178
Maintenance, routine 118, 174–175
Manoeuvring aids (recommendations) 117
Map reading lamps 64
Markings, identification 204
Massage function 47
Massage, multi-point 47
Mat 64, 118
Menu 213
Menu, main 25
Menus (audio) 208–209, 220–221
Menu short cuts 25
Messages 237
Messages, quick 238
Mirror, rear view 49
Mirrors, door 48, 57, 139
Mirror, vanity 61
Misfuel prevention 156
Mobile application 25–26, 59, 164, 166
Motor, electric 112, 157, 203
Motorised tailgate 34–35
Mountings, ISOFIX 95

N

Navigation 225–227
Navigation, connected 228–230
Net, high load retaining 66
Night vision 75
Night Vision 75

O

Obstacle detection 140
Oil change 172
Oil consumption 172
OIl, engine 172
On-board tools 67, 181–182
Opening the bonnet 170–171
Opening the boot 29, 33
Opening the doors 29, 33
Opening the windows 27

P

Pads, brake 174–175
Paint 178, 204
Paint colour code 204
Parcel shelf, rear 65
Park Assist 146
Parking brake, electric 104–106, 174
Parking sensors, audible and visual 140
Parking sensors, front 141
Parking sensors, rear 140
Passenger compartment temperature pre-conditioning (Rechargeable hybrid) 26, 59
Pedestrian horn (Rechargeable hybrid) 81
Personalisation 11
Plates, identification 204
Player, Apple® 212, 235
Player, USB 211, 234
Port, USB 61, 65, 211, 213, 230, 234
Power 21
Power indicator (Rechargeable hybrid) 8, 10, 21
Pressures, tyres 175, 182, 184, 205
Pre-tensioning seat belts 87
Priming pump 180
Priming the fuel system 180
Profiles 216, 238
Programmable cruise control 123
Protecting children 89–93, 95–96, 99
Puncture 182, 184

R

Radar (warnings) 117
Radio 209–210, 232–233
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB) 211, 233–234
Range, AdBlue® 19, 173
RDS 210, 233
READY lamp 170
Rear air blower 56
Rear screen, demisting 57
Rechargeable hybrid engine 8, 25, 170, 196, 203

Rechargeable hybrid system 6, 8, 25, 103, 112, 157
Recharging the battery 192, 194–195
Recharging the traction battery 160
Recharging the traction battery (Rechargeable hybrid) 157, 164–165
Recirculation, air 55–56
Recovery 196–198
Recovery of the vehicle 196–197
Reduction of electrical load 170
Regeneration of the particle filter 174
Regenerative braking (deceleration by engine braking) 110
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system 116–117
Reinitialising the remote control 33
Reminder, lighting on 69
Remote control 27–28, 30–31
Remote functions 166
Remotely operable functions (Rechargeable hybrid) 26, 59
Removing a wheel 185–186
Removing the mat 64
Replacing bulbs 187–189
Replacing fuses 190
Replacing the air filter 174
Replacing the oil filter 174
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 174
Reservoir, screenwash 173
Reset trip 22–23
Rev counter 10
Reversing camera 118, 142–143, 145
Reversing lamps 189
Roof bars 168–169
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 180

S

Safety, children 89–93, 95–96, 99
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) 174
Screen menu map 213
Screens, very cold conditions 169
Screenwash 77
Screenwash, front 77
Screenwash, rear 77
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 20, 175
Seat angle 45, 50
Seat belts 86–87, 93
Seat belts, rear 86
Seats, electric 45–46
Seats, front 44–46
Seats, heated 46–47
Seats, rear 49–51, 91
Selector, gear 106–110
Sensorial Drive function 51
Sensors (warnings) 118
Serial number, vehicle 204
Service indicator 18, 21
Servicing 18, 174–175
Settings, equipment 24
Settings, system 216, 239
Shield, snow 169
Sidelamps 69–70, 188–189
Side parking sensors 141
Silent vehicle warning sound (Rechargeable hybrid) 81
Ski flap 65
Smartphone 26, 62
Snow chains 116, 169–170
Snow screen 169
Socket, 12 V accessory 61, 66
Socket, auxiliary 212, 234
Socket, Jack 234
Speakers 63
Speed limiter 120–122
Speed limit recognition 118–119
Speedometer 10, 118
Sport mode 111–112
Spotlamps, side 71
Stability control (ESC) 83–84
Starting a Diesel engine 155
Starting/Stopping the vehicle 102
Starting the engine 102–103
Starting the vehicle 102, 106–109
Starting using another battery 103, 191
State of charge, battery 25
Station, radio 209–210, 232–233
Steering mounted controls, audio 207, 220
Steering wheel, adjustment 48
Stickers, customising ~ Stickers, expressive 178
Stopping the vehicle 103, 106–109
Stop & Start 23, 53, 57, 114–115, 155, 170, 174, 193
Storage 61–62, 63, 65
Storage box 67
Storage compartments 61

Storage wells 65, 67
Storing driving positions 46
Stowing rings 65
Sunroof, panoramic 41–42
Sunshine sensor 52
Sun visor 61
Suspension 175
Suspension with variable vibration reduction 111
Switching off the engine 102
Synchronising the remote control 33

T

Tables of engines 200, 202–203
Tailgate 33
Tank, fuel 155–156
Technical data 200, 202–203
Telephone 214–215, 235–238
Temperature, coolant 19
Ticket holder 61
Time (setting) 23, 216, 239
TMC (Traffic info) 227
Tool box 67
Tools 181–182
Topping-up AdBlue® 176
Top Tether (fixing) 95
Total distance recorder 22
Touch screen 24–25, 59
Touch-sensitive reading lamps 64
Towbar 84, 166
Towed loads 199–200, 202–203
Towing another vehicle 196, 198
Traction battery charge 160
Traction battery (Rechargeable hybrid) 21, 157–158, 164
Traction control (ASR) 83–84
Traffic information (TMC) 227
Trailer 84, 166
Trailer stability assist (TSA) 84
Trajectory control systems 83
Triangle, warning 180
Trip computer 22–23
Trip distance recorder 22
Tyres 175, 205
Tyre under-inflation detection 116, 184

U

Under-inflation (detection) 116
Unlocking 27, 29
Unlocking from the inside 30
Unlocking the boot 27, 29
Unlocking the doors 30–31
Unlocking the tailgate 27, 29
Updating the date 217, 239
Updating the time 216, 239
USB 211, 213, 230, 234

V

Vehicle data recording and privacy 243
Ventilation 52, 58–59
Video 234
Visibility 57
Vision, 180° forward 145
Voice commands 222–225

W

Wallbox (Rechargeable hybrid) 158–159, 165
Warning and indicator lamps 12
Warning lamp, driver''s seat belt not fastened 87
Warning lamps 12, 21
Warning lamp, seat belts 87
Warnings and indicators 12
Washing 118
Washing (advice) 157, 178
Weights 199
Welcome function 46
Welcome lighting 28, 71
Wheel, spare 175, 181–182, 184–185
Window controls 40
Windscreen, heated 57–58
Windscreen wipers 76, 78
Wiper blades (changing) 77–78
Wiper, rear 77
Wipers 76, 79
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 78–79

The Manufacturer declares, in accordance with the provisions of European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End-of-Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

No part of this document may be reproduced or translated without written permission from the Manufacturer.

4DCONCEPT
Groupe MAURY Imprimeur

Printed in the EU
04-21

DS AUTOMOBILES

SPIRIT OF
AVANT-GARDE

DSautomobiles.com

ANG. 21DS7.0040